

F O R E I G N S E R V I C E I N S T I T U T E

# L I N G A L A

## BASIC COURSE



D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

# L I N G A L A

## BASIC COURSE



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

JAMES REDDEN, F. BONGO AND ASSOCIATES  
**FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE**  
WASHINGTON, D.C.  
**1963**

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

*FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE*  
*BASIC COURSE SERIES*  
*Edited by*  
*CARLETON T. HODGE*

For sale by the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office  
Washington, D.C., 20402 - Price \$1.50

## BASIC COURSE

---

### P R E F A C E

*Lingala is a trade language spoken along about a nine hundred mile stretch of the Congo River from Leopoldville upstream. Most of the people who speak Lingala are native speakers of other languages and use Lingala for communicating with persons outside their own language group.*

*The Lingala Basic Course is one of a series prepared by the Foreign Service Institute in its Special African Languages Program, coordinated by Earl W. Stevick. This series is being produced under an agreement with the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, under the National Defense Education Act.*

*The course in its present form is based on classroom experience with a group of Foreign Service Officers. It is designed to provide basic structures and vocabulary for the situations in which the foreigner is most likely to need Lingala.*

*The linguist in charge of the project has been James E. Redden. He was assisted by Frederic Bongo, Ernest Masakala, and Emil Zola, Language Instructors.*

*The tapes which accompany the text were prepared in the Foreign Service Institute Language Laboratory under the supervision of Gabriel Cordova.*



*Howard E. Sollenberger, Dean  
School of Language and Area Studies  
Foreign Service Institute  
Department of State*

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Contents .....	iv
Introduction	
Identification and location .....	x
Tone .....	xI
Symbol list .....	xII
Unit 1	
Dialogue: 'Greetings' .....	1
Note: 1. Verb prefixes .....	2
2. Particle /ná/, 'and', 'together with'.....	3
3. Particle /na/ after /-zala/ .....	3
4. Particle /na/ and /ya/: Possession .....	3
5. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Description .....	4
6. Response to yes-no questions .....	4
7. Intonation. Statement vs. Question .....	5
8. Nouns: Singular and Plural .....	6
9. /o/ before another vowel .....	7
10. Drills: Instructions on How to Use .....	7
Unit 2	
Dialogue: 'Do you speak Lingala?' .....	10
Note: 1. Negation: /té/ .....	11
2. Verb: Base and affixes .....	12
3. Aspect: Perfective/Imperfective .....	12
4. Tense: Time Segments .....	12
5. Immediate Past: Permanent States: Present Locations .....	14
6. Habitual Action: Continued State .....	15
7. Temporary Habitual Present: Proximate Fu- ture .....	16
8. Spelling of long or double identical vowels	16

## BASIC COURSE

---

9.	Vowel Harmony .....	16
10.	The Kituba Language .....	18

### Unit 3

Dialogue:	'Do you want to come to my house today? '...	21
Note:	1. Infinitive prefix: /ko-/ .....	23
	2. Purpose: Immediate Future .....	24
	3. Immediate Present .....	24
	4. Potential Future .....	25
	5. Imperative .....	25
	6. Spelling of long identical vowels .....	25
	7. Possessive Construction with Infinitive...	30
	8. Immediate Past of /-lia/ .....	30
	9. Order of Possessive and Descriptive Phrases	30

### Unit 4

Dialogue:	'The Rapids' .....	31
Note:	1. Noun Classes .....	33
	2. Verb Subject Prefixes .....	35
	3. Nasal Homorganic with following Consonant	36
	4. Adjectives .....	43
	5. Prominence of Initial Sentence Position ..	44

### Unit 5

Dialogue:	'On the Way to Work .....	45
Note:	1. Nouns of deed or action, type 1 .....	48
	2. Independent or Emphatic Subject Pronouns .	48
	3. Very Polite Questions and Requests .....	49
	4. Vowel Harmony in Noun Prefixes .....	49
	5. Recent Past: Recent Past Progressive ....	49
	6. Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals .....	50
	7. Telephone Numbers .....	50
	8. Plural of /mokáma/ 'hundred' .....	50
	9. 'Passive' Plural .....	55

10.	Adjective Subordinate Clauses .....	55
11.	/kosolola na/ .....	55
Unit 6		
Dialogue:	'At the Office' .....	56
Note:	1. Equational Sentences .....	60
	2. Non-animate Independent Pronouns .....	60
	3. Subjunctive .....	60
	4. Applicative Suffix .....	61
	5. Indirect Discourse: Particle /te/ .....	61
Unit 7		
Dialogue:	'At the Market' .....	66
Note:	1. Desiderative .....	69
	2. Nominalization of Adjectives .....	69
	3. Interrogative Relative Pronouns .....	74
	4. Potential Juncture Before Relative Clauses	74
	5. /-tikala/ Plus Object .....	75
	6. Please .....	75
Unit 8		
Dialogue:	'At the Filling Station' .....	76
Note:	1. Vowel and Semi-vowel Elision .....	80
	2. Reversive .....	80
	3. Reversive Stative .....	80
	4. Derived Stems Without Simple Stems .....	81
	5. Causative .....	81
	6. Degree of Immediate Past .....	81
	7. Proverb Concordance .....	82
	8. Non-applicative Verbs With Two Objects ....	87
	9. Functionally-specialized Use of Imperative	87
Unit 9		
Dialogue:	'The Houseboy' .....	88
Note:	1. Comparison of Intensity .....	91
	2. Definite Condition .....	91

---

## BASIC COURSE

---

3.	General Prohibitions .....	91
4.	Special Meanings of Derived Stems .....	92
5.	/tée/ Followed by /na/ .....	92
6.	/libosó/ Plus Subjunctive .....	97

### Unit 10

Dialogue:	'The Telephone'	98
Note:	1. Hypothetical Supposition .....	106
	2. 'Passive' Plural .....	106
	3. Future in Non-initial and Subordinate Clauses	106

### Unit 11

Dialogue:	'At the Doctor's'	107
Note:	1. Emphatic /wápi/ .....	111
	2. Spelling of /oo/ .....	111

### Unit 12

Dialogue:	'Mosquitoes'	117
Note:	1. Nouns From Derived Stems .....	121
	2. Agent Nouns .....	122
	3. /wa/, /ya/ .....	122
	4. Literary Use of /ndé/ of Mark Future .....	122
	5. Hyperbole with /...mayele té/ .....	122
	6. Norms of Deed or Action, Type 2 .....	122

### Unit 13

Dialogue:	'The Workshop'	130
Note:	1. Passive .....	134
	2. Ingressive Stative: Reciprocal .....	135
	3. /mikolo mikomi mosika/ .....	135
	4. Instrument Nouns, Type 1 .....	136
	5. Locative Nouns, Type 1 .....	136
	6. Avoidance of Base Repetition .....	136
	7. Instrument Nouns, Type 2 .....	136
	8. Instrument Nouns, Type 3 .....	138
	9. Expletive .....	138

Unit 14		
Dialogue:	'Elections' .....	143
Note:	1. Miscellaneous Nouns .....	146
	2. /se/ .....	147
	3. Ambiguity of Agent and Indirect Object .....	152
	4. Lovanium University .....	153
	5. Leopoldville II .....	153
Unit 15		
Dialogue:	'Military Service' .....	154
Note:	1. Intermediate Past .....	157
	2. Distant Past .....	157
	3. Comparison of Intensity .....	158
	4. Comparison of Degree .....	158
	5. Inversion of Subject and Verb .....	158
Unit 16		
Dialogue:	'Building a Road' .....	164
Note:	1. Subject With Two Verbs .....	169
	2. Immediate Past of /-longwa/ .....	169
	3. Indefinite Condition .....	169
Unit 17		
Dialogue:	'Traffic Control' .....	175
Unit 18		
Dialogue:	'A New House' .....	184
Note:	1. /-zala ya/ .....	188
	2. Equational Sentence with Emphatic Subject ....	189
Unit 19		
Dialogue:	'Leaving For The Store' .....	195
Note:	1. Reflexive .....	199
	2. Compound Agent Nouns .....	203
	3. Kinship Terminology .....	204

## BASIC COURSE

---

### Unit 20

Dialogue:	'A Student Visa'	205
Note:	1. /ífo/ plus Subjunctive	208
	2. Reduplication for Intensity	208
	3. Wishes, Intentions, Plans	208

### Unit 21

Dialogue:	'A Lost Pencil'	214
Note:	1. Double Spatial Relationships	217
	2. Partitive	218

### Unit 22

Dialogue:	'The Bus to Kimwenza'	223
Note:	1. /longwá áwa tíí na Kimwénza/	226
	2. /nsíma ya mikolo misátu/	226

### Unit 23

Dialogue:	'A Wedding'	232
Note:	1. Suggestive Cohortative	236
	2. Distant Indefinite Future	241

### Unit 24

Dialogue:	'The Seasons'	242
Glossary		252

Introduction

Lingala is a lingua franca or trade language spoken in the areas on both sides of the Congo River from Leopoldville up to about a hundred miles from Stanleyville. Lingala, usually called Mangala by Africans, was originally the language of the Bamangala, a Bantu tribe that has almost completely disappeared. Most speakers of Lingala are native speakers of another language and use Lingala as a means of communicating with other tribal groups and to a lesser extent with Europeans; however, there is a growing number of younger people, especially in urban centers such as Leopoldville, whose native language is Lingala. Since Lingala is spoken by so many people of varied linguistic backgrounds, it is inevitable that the language as spoken in different areas should vary to a greater or lesser degree.

The speaker on whose speech these materials are based is from Leopoldville, a child of parents who could not speak each other's language and who consequently always spoke Lingala with each other and with their children. Lingala has been a written language for quite some time, but unfortunately written or 'literary' Lingala is different in many ways from Lingala as it is nearly always spoken by Africans. One can say without hesitation that literary Lingala is an invention of Europeans who have tried to 'improve' on the language, because Africans who speak Lingala fluently have trouble understanding literary Lingala even when it is spoken. This manual is based strictly on Lingala as spoken by the person described above.

The transcription system used in this manual is the orthography regularly used to write Lingala plus diacritic markings to indicate tone, which is not usually written, and to make it clear how a word or segment is pronounced in cases where the student may have difficulty interpreting the orthography. Some words have been respelled, but this is indicated in the footnotes the first time the respelling occurs.

Lingala contains many words borrowed both from African and European languages. It is often difficult, if not impossible, to recognize words borrowed from other Bantu languages. Since most of the people who speak Lingala are native speakers of some other language, words from other languages are constantly used in Lingala. A number of Arabic words have come in via Swahili. Portuguese and French words have been borrowed for several centuries, and many such words have been so fully assimilated into the sound system that they too are very hard to recognize. A number of English words also have entered. French words are freely used in everyday speech in a more or less unassimilated form. Those persons who speak French fluently also try to pronounce French words as they would be in French when these words are used in Lingala. Assimilated words occurring in this text are spelled as pronounced in Lingala, and the first time they occur, the standard French spelling is given in parentheses, e.g., /letá/ (*l'état*), 'government'. Words recently borrowed and not assimilated into the Lingala sound system are given the standard French spelling in the Lingala text. Unassimilated French words usually have a high tone on the final syllable. The diacritic marks on French words are NOT tone marks, but they are the same as those regularly used in French spelling.

Lingala, like almost all the languages spoken south of the Sahara, is a tone language. Each syllable has its own tone. Tone is as much an integral part of a syllable as vowels and consonants. Words are distinguished by tone, e.g., /ngái/, 'I', 'me' (a low and two highs), and /ngai/, 'scur(ness)', 'bitter(ness)' (three lows). Lingala has two contrastive or phonemic tones: high //, low / / (unmarked). However, there are many speakers of Lingala who use a stress system instead of tones. Most speakers who use a stress system stress the penultimate syllable. Because of these speakers and because tone has a smaller phonemic yield, i.e., plays a smaller role, in Lingala than in the great majority of African languages, one can obviously communicate in Lingala without using its tone system. But the majority of speakers of the

language do use tone, including the speaker used as the model for this manual,

Sentence intonation, e.g., use of pitch to distinguish statements and questions, is also used in Lingala. This is described in Note 1.7. In reference to the notes in this manual, the first numeral refers to the unit and the second numeral refers to the note.

In the four column chart given below, column I gives the orthography except for /e/ and /ø/ (See footnote 3 below), column II gives the phonemes, column III gives the phonetic symbols, and column IV is an approximation of the sound using American English and French sounds for comparison.

Symbol	Phoneme	Phonetics	Approximation
p	/p/	[p]	<u>p</u> in
t	/t/	[t]	<u>t</u> in
k	/k/	[k]	<u>c</u> ome
kp <sup>4.</sup>	/kp/	[kp, 'kp]	simultaneous <u>k</u> and <u>p</u>
b	/b/	[b]	<u>b</u> e
d	/d/	[d]	<u>d</u> o
g	/g/	[g]	<u>g</u> o
gb <sup>4.</sup>	/gb/	[gb, 'gb]	simultaneous <u>g</u> and <u>b</u>
f	/f/	[f]	<u>f</u> ee
s	/s/	[s]	<u>s</u> ee
h	/h/	[h]	<u>h</u> e
z	/z/	[z, ž, dz, dž]	<u>z</u> ero
m	/m/	[m]	<u>m</u> e
n	/n/	[n, ŋ]	<u>n</u> o, <u>sing</u>
ny	/ɲ/	[ɲ ſ̪]	ye pronounced through the nose
ngb <sup>4.</sup>	/ŋb/	[ŋb]	simultaneous <u>m</u> and <u>ŋ</u>
l	/l/	[l]	<u>l</u> et
w	/w/	[w]	<u>w</u> e

## BASIC COURSE

---

y	/y/	[y]	<u>y</u> es
v <sup>l.</sup>	/v/	[v]	<u>v</u> ine
r <sup>l.</sup>	/r/	[r, y, x]	French <u>gare</u>
ɪ	/ɪ/	[ɪ^, ɿ]	<u>be</u> at <sup>2</sup>
e	/e/	[ɛ, eɛ^]	<u>bai</u> t <sup>2</sup>
e <sup>3</sup>	/ɛ/	[ɛ, ee^]	<u>bet</u>
a	/a/	[a, ɑ]	<u>bottle</u>
ɔ <sup>3</sup>	/ɔ/	[ɔ]	<u>bought</u>
o	/o/	[o, u]	<u>boat</u> <sup>2</sup>
u	/u/	[u^, u]	<u>boot</u> <sup>2</sup>
.	/##/	step down in pitch on preceding syllable and pause	
,	/ /	pause	
?	/  /	greater interval between high and low than for /##/ and usually stress on the preceding high	

A number of special symbols are also used as explained below.

( ) Enclosed Lingala elements are usually elided at conversation speed; or enclosed English elements are given for clarity of meaning.

/ / In the chart above, this symbol means Lingala phonemics; elsewhere, it means the symbolization used in this grammar.

// // Ordinary Lingala orthography. Spaces between words to mark word boundaries are the same as those used in the orthography except as given in the footnotes.

## NOTES

1. /v/ and /r/ are used only in unassimilated loan words.
2. There is no y- or w-offglide with Lingala vowels in contrast to English vowels which sound somewhat the same.
3. /ɛ/ is usually //ɛ//, but sometimes //ε//, /ɔ/ is usually //o//, but sometimes //ɔ//.
4. /kp/, /gb/, and /ngb/ are very rare. This manual contains only one word with /gb/ and no words with /kp/ or /ngb/. They are usually explosive, but some speakers are reported to use implosives.

## Unit 1

## Basic Sentences

## -A-

mbóté greetings, good morning/  
afternoon/evening

1. Mbóté. Hello.

## -B-

ée yes

2. Ée, mbóté. Hello.

## -A-

-zala to be, exist, live, sit,  
dwell

ozali you (sg.) are

malámu good, well, fine

3. Ozalí malámu? How are you?

## -B-

nazali I am

na and, with, as well as, even

yó, yoó you (sg.)

4. Ée, nazalí malámu. Ná yó? I'm fine. And you?

## -A-

5. Éé, nazalí malámu. I'm fine.

## -B-

mama, ba-	mother
mwana, <sup>θ</sup> bána	child
na	and, with; of, having; consisting of; at, along, by

6. Mamá na bána azali malámu? How is your wife?

## -A-

7. Éé, azali malámu. She's fine.

## -B-

mpé	and, also, likewise
8. Ná bána mpé?	And the children?

## -A-

bangó	they, them, those
bánso	all
9. Éé, bangó bánso bazali malámu.	They are all fine.

## NOTES

## 1.1. Verb prefixes.

Verbs have one of several prefixes to mark: (1) person (first, second, third), (2) number (singular, plural), and (3) other grammatical categories which will be discussed later. Note the underlined prefixes in the chart below.

## ANIMATE SUBJECT PREFIXES OF VERBS

	<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>
1st person	<u>nazalí</u> I am		<u>tozalí</u> we are
2nd person	<u>ozalí</u> you (sg.) are		<u>bozalí</u> you (pl.) are
3rd person	<u>azalí</u> he, she, it is		<u>bazalí</u> they are

## 1.2. Particle /ná/, 'and', 'together with'

At conversation speed /ná/ is usually /na/, i.e., low-toned, but for emphasis or if there is ambiguity, it is /ná/, i.e., high-toned, and is stressed, i.e., louder than adjacent syllables, e.g., /azalí ná mwána/, 'he is with the child', or /tatá ná mamá ná bána/, 'the father and also the mother and the children as well'. In a question /ná/ is always high.

## 1.3. Particle /na/ after /-zala/

The verb /-zala/ plus /na/ has a number of meanings from the English point of view. Most commonly /-zala na/ translates 'has' or 'have', e.g., /azalí na mwána/, 'he has a child', but a number of other meanings are possible, e.g., 'he is with the child', 'he is looking after the child'.

## 1.4. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Possession

One of the uses of the particles /na/ and /ya/ is to mark possession. The noun preceding the particle is the possessed, and the noun or pronoun following the particle is the possessor. If the possessor is a noun, /ya/ occurs, e.g., /mwána ya mobálí/, 'the child of the man/male/husband'. If the possessor is a pronoun, /na/ usually occurs, e.g., /mwána na ngái/, 'my child', 'child of me'. /ya/ does occur occasionally before pronouns in possessive

constructions. If the possessor is a pronoun, the independent form of the pronoun occurs. See the chart below.

### INDEPENDENT PRONOUNS

	<u>Singular</u>	<u>Plural</u>
1st person	ngái	bisú
2nd person	yō, yōō	binú
3rd person	yé, yeē	bangó

#### 1.5. Particles /na/ and /ya/: Description

In general if /na/ occurs between two nouns, it is understood as 'and', 'in addition'; but there are a few specialized constructions like /mamá na bána/, 'woman with children', 'wife', 'lady'. This construction is used as a polite term of address if it is known to the speaker that the woman being addressed has children. Or it is used as a polite term of reference to the wife of the man being addressed. If it is not known to the speaker whether the couple has children, one would use /mwásí na yō/, 'your woman/wife/female', as a term of reference and /mamá/ 'mother/lady/madam', as a term of address. Both terms are polite, but /mamá na bána/ and /mamá/ establish greater rapport if used. Likewise /tata na bána/, 'husband/man/gentleman', and /tata/, 'father/gentleman/sir', occur in this type situation when referring to a man.

In general if /ya/ occurs between two nouns, it is understood as, 'of', 'belonging to'; but it may also indicate description or quality, e.g. /mwána ya mobáli/, 'boy', 'male child', 'son'. Compare note 1.4.

#### 1.6. Response to yes-no questions.

In answering a yes-no question, it is necessary to say /é/, 'yes', or /té/, 'no', even though the question is answered with a

sentence, e.g., /Ozali malamu/, 'Are you well?', is answered by /ee, nazali malamu./, 'Yes, I am well.'

#### 1.7. Intonation: Statement vs. Question

Statements and questions are distinguished by intonation, i.e., they have different pitch patterns or sentence melodies. In general, the pitch level of a sentence becomes gradually lower. The interval or amount of pitch difference between high and low is greater in a question than in a statement, especially between the last high and the lows in the preceding syllable and in the following syllable, but in a long sentence the interval between high and low is no greater in the first several syllables than the interval in a statement.

#### INTONATION

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Question</u>
He likes meat.	Does he like meat?
Alingí nyama.	Alingí nyama?

Though the pitch does fall over a sentence, the second of two low tones is slightly higher if followed by a high tone. The last syllable of a statement is conspicuously lower in pitch and usually in amplitude, but at the end of a question only a low tone is lower. A final high in a statement is usually just a little lower than a preceding low. A final high in a question is much higher than a preceding low; a final high after a high is approximately on the same level as or a little higher than the preceding high. A final high in a question may be either level or high-rising

## INTONATION

<u>Statement</u>	<u>Question</u>
He likes manioc leaves.	Does he like manioc leaves?
Alingí mpondú.	Alingí mpondú?

## 1.8. Nouns: Singular and Plural

Nouns are marked for singular and plural by prefixes. Most nouns referring to persons have /mo-/ in the singular and /ba-/ in the plural, e.g., /mótu/, 'person', 'human', and /bátu/, 'people'. Kinship terms usually have no prefix in the singular, e.g., /tata/, 'father', but do have /ba-/ in the plural, as in /batata/, 'fathers'. The plural prefix is listed after a noun the first time the noun

occurs. If the plural is irregular, the entire plural form is given, e.g., /mwána/, 'child', /<sup>o</sup>bána/, 'children'. Irregular plurals are marked with the symbol <sup>o</sup> to distinguish them from alternate forms of the singular. The plural should be learned along with the vocabulary item. The plural of some (especially abstract) nouns rarely occurs. Rare plurals are given in parentheses, e.g., /bolái, (ma-)/, 'length', 'depth', 'height'. Also some nouns occur only in the plural.

1.9. /o/ before another vowel.

/o/ before another vowel is regularly /w/, e.g., /\*moána/, is /mwána/, 'child'.

1.10. Drills: Instructions on How to Use

In doing the drills, the teacher is to give the student the first sentence. After having the student repeat the first sentence, give him the underlined portion of the next sentence and have the student give back the new sentence composed of the underlined portion plus the required parts of the preceding sentence. See model below.

MODEL DRILL

Teacher: Nazalí malámu.

Student: Nazalí malámu.

Teacher: Ozali

Student: Ozali malámu.

LEXICAL DRILL 1

1. Nazalí malámu. I am fine.
2. Ozali malámu. You (sg.) are fine.

- 
- |                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 3. <u>Azali</u> malámu.  | He / she is fine.   |
| 4. <u>Tozali</u> malámu. | We are fine.        |
| 5. <u>Bozali</u> malámu. | You (pl.) are fine. |
| 6. <u>Bazali</u> malámu. | They are fine.      |

## LEXICAL DRILL 2

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. Azali malámu?                               | How is he?              |
| 2. <u>Mwana</u> na <u>yó</u> azali malámu?     | How is your child?      |
| 3. <u>Mwasi</u> na <u>yé</u> azali malámu?     | How is his wife?        |
| 4. <u>Mobali</u> na <u>yé</u> azali malámu?    | How is her husband?     |
| 5. <u>Tata</u> na <u>binu</u> azali malámu?    | How is your father?     |
| 6. <u>Mama</u> na <u>bangó</u> azali malámu?   | How is their mother?    |
| 7. <u>Bána</u> na <u>yó</u> bazali malámu?     | How are your children?  |
| 8. <u>Bamama</u> na <u>bisu</u> bazali malámu? | How are our mothers?    |
| 9. <u>Bangó</u> <u>banso</u> bazali malámu?    | Are they all all right? |
| 10. <u>Mamá</u> na <u>bána</u> azali malámu.   | How is your wife?       |

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

Answer affirmatively:

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Ozali malámu?                    | Ée, nazali malámu.              |
| 2. Azali malámu?                    | Ée, azali malámu.               |
| 3. Bozali malámu?                   | Ée, tozali malámu.              |
| 4. Bazali malámu?                   | Ée, bazali malámu.              |
| 5. Bána na <u>yó</u> bazali malámu? | Ée, bána na ngái bazali malámu. |
| 6. Tata na <u>yó</u> azali malámu?  | Ée, tatá na ngái azali malámu.  |

7. Mamá na bangó azalí malámu? Ée, mamá na bangó azalí malámu.
8. Mwána na yé azalí malámu? Ée, mwána na yé azalí malámu.
9. Bána na ngái bazalí malámu? Ée, bána na yó bazalí malámu.
10. Mwásí na yó azalí malámu? Ée, mwásí na ngái azalí malámu.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Azalí mwána.                      | He is young.                      |
| 2. <u>Nazalí</u> na mwána.           | I have a child.                   |
| 3. Nazalí na <u>bána</u> .           | I have children.                  |
| 4. <u>Bazalí</u> ná bána.            | They are with the children.       |
| 5. Bazalí ná <u>mamá</u> na ngái.    | They are with my mother.          |
| 6. <u>Tozalí</u> na mamá na ngái.    | We are with my mother.            |
| 7. Tozalí na <u>mwána</u> na yó.     | We are taking care or your child. |
| 8. <u>Mamá</u> azalí na mwána na yó. | Mother has your child.            |
| 9. Mama azalí na <u>bangó</u> bánsó. | Mother has all of them.           |
| 10. <u>Bozalí</u> na bangó bánsó.    | You have all of them.             |

## UNIT 2

## Basic Sentences

-A-

**-loba** to speak, tell, say

1. Olobaka Lingala? Do you speak Lingala?

-B-

-yéba to know, be acquainted with;  
may, be allowed to

nainu still, yet

te not, no

2. Nayébi nainu malámu té. I don't know it very well yet.

- A -

3. Olobaka Français mpé? Do you speak French too?

- B -

kásı but

## Anglais English

4. Ée, kási nayébi Anglais té. Yes, but I don't speak English.

-A-

ndinga, n- language

nini what, which

ndáko, n- house

5. Olobaka ndinga nini na ndáko? What language do you speak at home?

**-B-**

letá (l'etat)

government, state

Kitúba, Kikóngó ya

the Kituba language

Letá, Kutúba

6. Tolobaka Lingála ná Kitúba. We speak Lingala and Kituba.

**-A-**

-yékola

to study, learn

7. Naákoyékola Lingála. I'm studying Lingala.

**-B-**

8. Malámu. That's fine.

## NOTES

## 2.1 Negation: /té/

The negative particle /té/ follows whatever it modifies. If it modifies a sentence, it occurs at the end of the sentence, e.g., /nayébí Anglais té/, 'I don't speak English.'

## 2.2 Verb: Base and Affixes

olobaka

nayébí

These may be diagrammed:

<u>Subject Prefix</u>	<u>Stem</u>		<u>Aspect Suffix</u>
	<u>Base</u>	<u>Verbal Extension</u>	
o-	lob	-ak	-a
na-	yéb		-í

The base and aspect suffix occur in every verb form. Prefixes and verbal extensions may or may not be present. The tone of the first stem syllable is fixed, i.e., always high or always low; but the tone of succeeding syllables of the stem is the same as the tone of the aspect suffix.

### 2.3 Aspect: Perfective/Imperfective

There are two aspect suffixes: the perfective and imperfective. The tone of the aspect suffix is high in the past and imperative, but low in the non-past and infinitive.

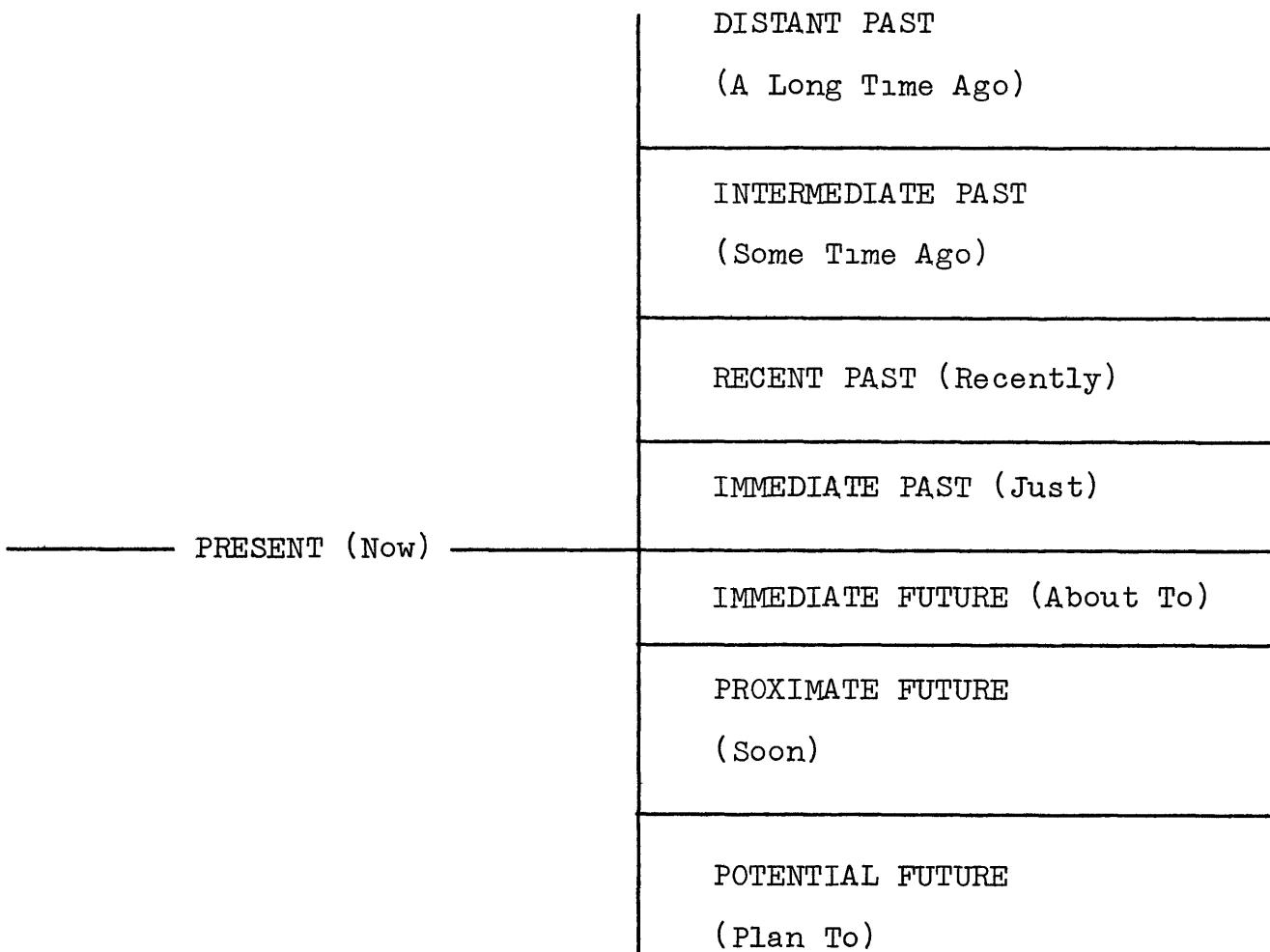
The perfective suffix /-i/ marks a form regarded by the speaker as indicating a completed action or state arrived at by the time referred to in the sentence. Since /-i/ is always a past, it always has high tone.

The imperfective suffix /-a/ marks a form regarded by the speaker as indicating an action or state continued through an indefinite period of time. Since the imperfective /-a/ occurs with the past, present, and future, it has high or low tone as described above.

### 2.4 Tense: Time Segments

In addition to dividing time into past, present, and future, Lingala segments time in a series of steps from the present. The borderline between the various degrees of distance from the present is relative, i.e., cannot be stated exactly in hours or days. The various tenses will be studied in the following lessons. Compare the English approximations of Lingala time divisions in the diagram below.

## LINGALA TIME DIVISION



## 2.5 Immediate Past: Permanent States: Present Locations

The perfective suffix /-í/ marks (1) the immediate past, (2) permanent or semi-permanent states and innate characteristics, and (3) permanent or present locations. (1) The immediate past most often refers to some time earlier the same day as the moment of speaking or some time the preceding day, but it may refer to any time in the last three or four or more days if the speaker considers the event to have just taken place. (2) Permanent or semi-permanent states and innate characteristics are such things as sex, nationality, name, profession, and marital state. (3) A permanent location, is a geographic or natural location; a present location is the present temporary location of anything movable. Compare the examples below.

## 1. nazalí

I have been, have become, have reached the state of, have been created as, i.e., I am, am in the act or state of, am by nature.

Nazalí mobáli.

I am a man.

Nazalí áwa.

I am here.

Nazalí koloba.

I am speaking.

## 2. nayébi

I have become acquainted with, i.e., I know.

Nayébi Lingála.

I speak Lingala.

Nayébi yé.

I know him.

3. nasáli I have done, I did, have just done, recently did.

Nasáli yangó. I made it.

Nasáli mosálá. I did the work.

## 2.6 Habitual Action: Continued State

The combination of the verbal extension /-ak-/ and the imperfective suffix marks the habitual present, which indicates a regular activity or usual part of the subject's behavior over a long, indefinite period, including the present. Compare the examples below.

1. nazalaka I am regularly, always, habitually

Nazalaka na ndáko. I'm always home.

Nazalaka ná yé. I'm always with him.

2. nalobaka I regularly speak.

Nalobaka Lingála. I(always)speak Lingala, i.e., Lingala is a habitual activity of mine.

3. nasálaka I regularly do.

Nasálaka bilámba. I (habitually) make clothes, i.e., I am a tailor.

## 2.7. Temporary Habitual Present: Proximate Future

A long or double subject-pronoun vowel with a high tone on the second element plus (or minus) a /ko-/ prefix to the verb stem, which

in turn has the imperfective suffix, marks (1) the temporary habitual present and/or (2) the proximate future. The /ko-/ prefix is optional, but it nearly always occurs. (1) A temporary habitual present indicates an activity which is a regular part of the subject's behavior for a rather short temporary period including the present; (2) a proximate future is something that will take place soon, e.g., /Naákoyékola Lingála/, 'I'm studying Lingala', 'At the present time, one of my regular activities is studying Lingala', or 'I'm going to be studying Lingala in the near future'.

## 2.8 Spelling of long or double identical vowels.

The Lingala orthography does not usually indicate long or double vowels of the same quality, e.g., /naákoyékola/ is usually //nakoyekola//. But since this spelling is the same as that of the potential future (See Note 3.2), sometimes an acute accent is added to the vowel of the subject pronoun, e.g., /naákoyékola/ is sometimes //nákoyekola//. Those cases when the regular orthography writes a long vowel will be indicated in the notes.

## 2.9 Vowel Harmony

There are certain limitation as to which vowels can precede or follow other vowels. These limitations are called vowel harmony. There are two series of vowels: primary and secondary.

primary vowels	i e a o u
secondary vowels	ɛ ɔ (ə)

/a/ is often a secondary vowel in verbal extensions and in the imperfective suffix, but /a/ is almost always primary in a base. The relationship of these two series is perhaps easier to see in a vowel triangle.

	Front	Back	
High	i	u	
Mid	e	o	Primary
	ɛ	ɔ	Secondary
Low	a		Primary (-Secondary)

## Vowel Harmony Rules

I. If the first syllable of a stem contains a primary vowel, all succeeding mid vowels will be primary, i.e., high mid, e.g., /naáyékolá/, 'I'm studying.'

II. If the first syllable of a stem contains a secondary vowel, all succeeding mid vowels will be secondary, i.e., low mid, unless a high vowel occurs after the secondary vowel, in which case succeeding mid vowels will be primary, e.g., /natekélí/, 'I sold for (someone)', but /nabongisélí/, 'I repaired for (someone)'.

III. When a secondary vowel occurs in a syllable before /a/ in either habitual extension /-ak-/ or the imperfective suffix /-a/, the same secondary vowel as in the preceding syllable also usually occurs in the extension and the imperfective suffix, e.g., /naken-deke/, 'I go', is the more common form, but /nakendaka/, 'I go', is also fairly common. If both the habitual extension and the imperfective suffix occur, both the extension and the suffix have the same vowel, i.e., /\*nakendeka/ does not occur.

IV. A low mid vowel immediately followed by a high vowel is often replaced by a high mid vowel, e.g., /omóní/, 'I see' is the more common form, but /omóní/, 'I see' is fairly common.

In bases ending in a vowel, a form with two primary vowels occurs, e.g., /nakeí/, 'I went', not /\*nakeí/. If /a/ occurs in

this environment, it acts as a secondary vowel, e.g., /nayéí/, 'I came', not /\*nayái/.

V. Verb prefixes are not influenced by vowel harmony.

VI. Some noun prefixes are subject to vowel harmony influence of the first syllable of the base in the same ways as described above for vowels following the initial base syllable. This will be further studied in Note 4.3.

## 2.10 The Kituba Language

Kituba is a lingua franca spoken to the west and south of Lingala. Many speakers of Lingala also know Kituba, and conversely. Lingala and Kituba share many words and grammatical structures. Kituba is also called Kikóngó ya Letá; but sometimes Kituba is restricted to mean that dialect of the language spoken in the eastern or Kwango-Kwiliu region, and Kikóngó ya Letá restricted to mean that of the western or lower Congo region.

### GRAMMATICAL DRILL I

-yóka	to hear, listen, feel understand
-------	-------------------------------------

moké, mi-	small, thin; a little; a bit, few
------------	--------------------------------------

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Olobaka Lingála?             | Do you speak Lingala?        |
| 2. Olobaka <u>Français</u> mpe? | Do you speak French too?     |
| 3. <u>Nayébi</u> Français mpe.  | I speak French too.          |
| 4. Nayébi <u>Lingála</u> moké. | I speak a little Lingala.    |
| 5. <u>Bayébi</u> Lingála moké. | They speak a little Lingala. |

6. Bayébi malámu té. They don't speak it very well.
7. Toyóki yó malámu té. We didn't understand you very well.
8. Toyóki yó moké. We understood you partly.
9. Boyébi Anglais moké. You (pl.) speak a little English.
10. Boyébi malámu. You (pl.) know it very well.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nazalí na ndáko ya ngái. I'm at home.
2. Nazalí na ndáko ya bangó. I'm at their house.
3. Azalí mwána ya bangó. He is their child.
4. Azalí mwána malámu. He's a good child.
5. Toyébi Lingála malámu. We speak Lingala well.
6. Toyébi Lingála moké. We speak a little Lingala.
7. Ozalí mwána moké. You are a small child.
8. Ozalí mwána ya mama ya ngái. You are a child of my mother.
9. Azalí tatá ya mama ya ngái. He is my mother's father.
10. Azalí tatá ya ngái. He is my father.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Naákoyékola Lingála. I'm studying Lingala.
2. Naákoyékola ndíngá na bínú. I'm learning your language.
3. Nayébi ndíngá na bínú. I know your language.
4. Nayébi Anglais té. I don't speak English.
5. Ayébi Anglais té. He doesn't know English.

6. Ayébi yó. He knows you.
7. Bayóki yó. They hear you.
8. Bayóki malámu. They feel fine. (i.e., They have recovered.)
9. Oyébi Lingála malámu. You speak Lingala well.
10. Oyébi Lingála ná Français. You speak Lingala and French.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Nayébi yé malámu té. I don't know him very well.
2. Nayébi mwána na yé ya mobálí. I know his son.
3. Azali mwána na yé ya mobálí. He is her son.
4. Azali na ndáko na ngái. He is at my house.
5. Tolobaka Kitúba na ndáko na ngái. We speak Kituba at my house.
6. Tolabaka Kitúba ná Français mpé. We speak Kituba and French also.
7. Bayébi Kitúba ná Français mpé. They know Kituba and French also.
8. Bayébi nainu malámu té. They don't know (how) very well.
9. Bayébi Anglais moke. I speak a little English.
10. Azali mwána moke. He is a small child.

## Unit 3

## Basic Sentences

- A -

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| -lingá                                     | to want, like; be almost<br>on the point of |
| -yáa                                       | to come, become                             |
| leló                                      | today                                       |
| 1. Olingí koyáa leló na<br>ndáko na ngái? | Do you want to come to my house<br>today?   |

- B -

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| sókó, sóki                     | if   |
| -zwa'                          | to get, receive, find, meet                                    |
| ntangu', ntango'               | time, hour, clock, sun   |
| 2. Sókó nazwi ntangu' nakoyáa. | If I get time, I will come. If nothing prevents me, I'll come. |

- A -

3. Olingí kolia nini? What do you like to eat?  
-lia : to eat

—B—

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| nsósó             | chicken           |
| lósó              | rice              |
| 4. Nsósó ná lósó. | Chicken and rice. |

- A -

5. Ná níni? And what else?

## -B-

mbisi	fish
mpondú	manioc leaves (used as a vegetable)
nyama	meat

6. Mbisi, mpoundú ná nyama. Fish, manioc leaves with meat.

## -A-

-lamba	to cook, prepare food
7. Malámu, nakolamba.	Good, I'll fix it.
-mele	to drink, suck up, smoke

8. Omela nini? What would you like to drink?

## -B-

vinu	wine
masanga	wine, beer
mbila	palm tree, palm nuts

9. Vinu na masanga ya mbila. Some wine and palm wine.

## -A-

-koka	to be able, can, be sufficient, be more than a given number
-yáa ná	to bring, come with

10. Okoki koyáa ná mwási na Can't you bring your wife?  
yo té?

## -B-

mibale	two
11. Tokoyáa bisú mibale.	We'll both come.

## -A-

12. Kendé malámu. Goodbye.

## -B-

13. Ná yó mpe. Goodbye.
14. Pésá mamá na bána mbóte. Say hello to your wife for me.

## -A-

15. Pésá mpé bána mbóte. And remember me to your children.

## -B-

16. Melesí. Thanks.

## NOTES

## 3.1 Infinitive prefix: /ko-/

Verbal nouns, here called infinitives, are marked by the prefix /ko-/ added to the imperfective verb stem, e.g., /kosála/, 'to do', 'doing'. This prefix may be added to any imperfective verb stem, so that, for example, there is also a form /kosálaka/, 'to do habitually'. Infinitives are invariable and, like other nouns, may be subjects of verbs, e.g., /kosála ezalí malámu/, 'It's good to work', 'Work is a good thing'. (The verb prefix /e-/ is described in Note 4.2.)

Infinitives often occur after a main verb much like a complementary infinitive in English, and the meaning of such a construction is usually obvious, e.g., /okoki koyáa/, 'you are able to come'. But sometimes the meaning is difficult for a speaker of English to guess. In such cases a footnote is given.

A verb of motion plus an infinitive indicates purpose, e.g., /ayéí kolía/, 'he has come to eat', 'he has come in order to eat'.

### 3.2 Purpose: Immediate Future.

/-linga/ followed by an infinitive expresses (1) purpose and/or (2) immediate future. (1) Purpose is a desire or a want; (2) the immediate future is something about to happen, e.g., /olíngi koyáa/, 'you want to come,' or 'you are about to come', 'you will come very soon'. Compare also /balíngi koloba Lingála/, 'They want to speak Lingala', or 'They will (soon be able to) speak Lingala, (but they can't speak it now)', 'They have nearly reached the state of being able to speak Lingala'. Sometimes 'almost ready to' is a good translation.

### 3.3 Immediate Present

/-zali/ plus an infinitive marks the immediate present, i.e., something taking place at the moment of speaking, e.g., /nazalí kolia/, 'I am eating', 'I am in the act/process/state of eating at this moment'.

Though the temporary habitual present (See Note 2.8) and the immediate present both usually translate 'I am... ing' and though both may often be used to describe the same event, they often contrast, e.g., /naákolia/, 'I'm eating', i.e., 'I'm studying (or whatever) but from time to time I eat something even though at this moment I may not have food in my mouth', /nazalí kolia/, 'I am eating something right at this moment'.

The immediate future (See Note 3.2) and the immediate present are both used to describe something which is going to happen very soon. If the immediate present is used, the event is so near that it is considered to have already begun, e.g., /azalí kokénde/, 'He is going', 'He is already starting to leave', /alingí kokénde/, 'He's about to go', 'He's going to leave in just a little bit'.

## 3.4 Potential Future

The prefix /-ko-/ plus the imperfective suffix with low tone form the potential future. The potential future may be any time in the future, but it is rather indefinite, i.e., it is much less sure to take place than the immediate and proximate futures, e.g., /nakoyáa/, 'I will come', 'I plan/intend to come'.

## 3.5 Imperative.

The imperative (commands) singular consists of the verb stem plus a high tone imperfective suffix, e.g., /Kéndé/, 'Go', 'Go away.'

The imperative plural consists of the prefix /bo-/ plus the imperative singular, e.g., /bosálá/, 'work' (speaking to more than one person). However, the imperative singular is often used when addressing more than one person.

/-yáa/ is irregular in the imperative, e.g., /yáká/, 'Come', /yákáká/, 'Come regularly'.

## 3.6 Spelling of long identical vowels

/koyáa/ is //koya//. Compare Note 2.9

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Nalingí kolía. I want to eat.
2. Nalingí mbísí. I like fish.
3. Nalingí kolía mbísí. I want to eat fish.
4. Nalingaka kolía mbísí. I like to eat fish.
5. Nalingaka mpondú ná nyama. I often eat manioc leaves with meat.
6. Nakolámba mpondú ná nyama. I'll cook manioc leaves with meat.
7. Nakolámba nsósó ná lóso. I'll fix chicken and rice.

8. Balingí nsósó ná lóso. They like chicken and rice.
9. Balingí koloba Lingála. They are going to speak Lingala.
10. Azali koloba Lingála. He's speaking (in) Lingala.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Tozali koyékola Lingála. We are studying Lingala.
2. Tozali bána na ye. We are his children.
3. Bozali bána na ye. You are his children.
4. Bozali kokende. You are leaving.
5. Alingí kokende. He wants to leave.
6. Alingí koyáa ná mwásí na ye. He wants to come with his wife.
7. Akokí koyáa ná mwásí na ye. He can come with his wife.
8. Akokí kolia na ngái. He can eat with me.
9. Balingí kolia na ngái. They want to eat with me.
10. Balingí kokende lelo. They want to leave today.

Question and Answer Drill 1

Answer the questions with a full sentence as directed by the underlined cues.

1. Olingí koyáa lelo na ndáko na ngái? Do you want to come to my house today?  
Ée, nalingí koyáa lelo na ndáko na yo. Yes, I want to come to your house.
2. Okozwá ntángu ya koyáa na ndáko na ngái? Will you have time to come to my house?  
Ée, nakozwá ntángu ya koyáa na ndáko na yo. Yes, I'll have time to come to your house.

3. Bolíngí kolía níní? What do you (pl.) want to eat?  
 Tolíngí kolía nsósó ná  
loso. We want chicken and rice.
4. Balámbaka níní? What do they usually prepare?  
 Balámbaka mbísí, mpondú  
ná nyama. They usually prepare fish and  
 manioc leaves with meat.
5. Baákolámba níní? What are they going to prepare?  
 Baákolámba mbísí, mpondú  
ná nyama. They are going to prepare fish  
 and manioc leaves with meat.
6. Akokí koyáa ná bána na Can't he bring his children?  
 yé té? Té, akokí koyáa ná bána na No, he can't bring his children.  
 yé té.
7. Bokoki kokendé binú mibale té. Can't you both go?  
Té, tokoki kokendé bisú No, we both can't go.  
 mibale té.
8. Ozalí na níní na ndáko? What do you have in the house?  
 Nazalí na vinu ná masanga  
ya mbila na ndáko. I have wine and palm wine in  
 the house.
9. Omelaka níní? What do you usually drink?  
 Namelaka masanga ya mbila. I usually drink palm wine.
10. Bolobaka ndinga níní? What language do you usually  
 speak?  
 Tolobaka Lingala. We usually speak Lingala.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Okayáa lelo na ndáko  
na ngái.
2. Okoyáa kolia nsósó na  
nyama.
3. Nakolámba nsósó na nyama.
4. Nakolámba sókó nazví ntángu.
5. Nakokende lelo sókó nazví  
ntángu.
6. Nakokende lelo na ndáko na ye.
7. Bakozala na ndáko na ye.
8. Bakozala ná mwásí na ngái.
9. Nakokende komele ná mwásí  
na ngái.
10. Nakokende komele vinu na  
masanga ya mbila.
- You will come to my house  
tomorrow.
- You will come to eat chicken  
and meat.
- I will prepare chicken and meat.
- I will fix (some) if I get time.
- I'll go today if I have time.
- I'll go to his house today.
- They will be at his house.
- They will be with my wife.
- I'm going out drinking with  
my wife.
- I'm going out to drink wine  
and beer.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Aliaka mpondú ná nyama.
2. Aleí mpondú ná nyama.
3. Aleí nsósó.
4. Bokoki kozwá nsósó.
5. Bokoki kozwá mbísí ná nyama.
6. Balingí mbísí ná nyama.
- He always eats manioc leaves  
and meat.
- He ate manioc leaves and meat.
- He ate (the) chicken.
- You (pl.) can have (the) chicken.
- You (pl.) can have (the) fish  
and also (the) meat.
- They want (the) fish and (the)  
meat too.

7. Balingí kokende na ndáko. They are about to go home.
8. Tozalí kokende na ndáko. We are on the way home.
9. Tozalí kolamba nyama. We are cooking the meat.
10. Ayébi kolamba nyama. She knows how to fix the meat.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Mama aákolamba nsósó ná lóso. Mother is going to fix chicken and rice.
2. Mama akolamba nsósó ná lóso. Mother will fix chicken and rice.
3. Mama alámbí nsósó ná lóso. Mother fixed chicken and rice.
4. Mama alámbaka nsósó ná lóso. Mother fixes chicken and rice. quite often.
5. Mama azali kolamba nsósó ná lóso. Mother is fixing the chicken and rice now.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mwána na ngái ya mobálí akokende lelo. My son will leave today.
2. Mwána na ngái ya mobálí akeí lelo. My son left today.
3. Mwána na ngái ya mobálí aákokende lelo. My son is leaving (later) today.
4. Mwána na ngái ya mobálí azali kokende lelo. My son is leaving (right away) today.
5. Mwána na ngái ya mobálí akendaka ntango nyónso. My son regularly leaves at this time.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Kéndé malámu. Goodby.
2. Kéndé ndáko. Go home. Go to the house.
3. Kéndé kolámba nyama. Go fix the meat.
4. Kéndé koyékola. Go study.
5. Kéndé kozwá lóso. Go get some rice.

## 3.7 Possessive Construction with Infinitive.

ntángu ya koyáa

When an infinitive is the possessor noun in a possessive construction, the infinitive is descriptive and usually translates as (1) a complimentary infinitive, (2) 'for' plus a gerund, or (3) present participle, e.g., /ntángu ya kolía/, (1) 'time to eat', (2) 'time for eating', or (3) 'eating time'.

## 3.8 Immediate Past of /-lia/

/-lia/ has an irregular immediate past /-léi/.

## 3.9 Order of Possessive and Descriptive Phrases

mwána na ngái ya mobáli

It both a possessive and a descriptive phrase modify a noun, the possessive phrase comes first, as in the phrase above, 'my son'.

## Unit 4

## Basic Sentences

## -A-

díi	friend, comrade
móno, móna	to see, feel
'chutes', (ba-)	rapids
bóongó	thus, so
-téleme	to stop, stand up; insist
wápi	where
1. Díi, nalingí komóna bachutes, bóongó nakoki kotéleme wápi?	Say, I'd like to see the rapids. Where can I go to get a good view of them?

## -B-

2. Oyébí ndáko ya 'President'  
na Binza? Do you know the President's  
house at Binza?

## -A-

3. Ée, nayébí. Yes, I do.

## -B-

-mata	to go up, climb, rise
mwáa	small, little, few
ngómbá, n-	hill, mountain
esíká, bi-	place

4. Okomata mwáa ngómbá esíká ya You climb the hill where the  
'monument' ya 'Stanley' monument to Stanley is.  
ezali.

-A-

**nsima, n-** back, rear, later,  
                  afterwards

na nsima then, next

5. Ná nsíma? And then what?

- B -

<i>lobóko</i> , <i>libóko</i> , ma-	arm, sleeve, side
<i>mwásí</i> , ba-	left, female
<i>libángá</i> , ma-	rock, stone
<i>loléngé</i> , <i>ndéngé</i> , n-	sort, kind; manner, way; quality; character, makeup

6. Na nsíma okomóna na lobóko  
ya mwási mabángá ndéngé      Then you will see all sorts of  
na ndéngé.                                rocks on the left.

- A -

melesí (merci)	thanks
tikala	to stay, remain

7. Melesí, tikálá malámu. Thanks, goodbye.

- B -

8. Kende malamu. Goodbye.

## CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Kangá ndáko.	Close the door.
Kangá monókó ya ndáko.	Close the door.
Fungólá lininísa.	Open the window.
Fungólá búuku.	Open your book (s).
Lobá lisúsu.	Say it again.
Lobá nsíma na ngái.	Repeat after me.
Yóká malámú.	Listen carefully.
Zóngísá na motúna óyo.	Answer the question.

-kanga	to stop, cease; close, shut, take, grasp, wrap up
monókó, mi-	mouth, opening; word, message
-fungola	to open, release, unlock
lininísa, ma-	window
lisúsu	again, anew; besides, moreover
búuku, (ba-)	book
-zóngisa	to send/give back, answer
motúna, mi-	question
óyo	this, these, the

## 4.1 Noun Classes

Lingala nouns are divided into several classes, which are distinguished by class prefixes. The MO-BA and the Ø-BA classes were introduced in Unit 1. Besides kinship terms, the Ø-BA class contains most recently-borrowed words, e.g., /chutes/, /bachutes/, 'rapids'. The plural prefix appears after each noun the first

time it occurs. All the nouns beginning with /mo-/ in the previous lessons belong to the MO-BA class except /mobáli/ and /moke/, which are MO-MI class. All the nouns in previous lessons beginning with a nasal consonant (m or n) plus another consonant are N-N class. There is now a rather strong tendency among younger people to put nouns of the N-N class into the  $\emptyset$ -BA class, i.e., instead of /ndáko/, 'house' and/or 'houses', some young people say /ndáko/, 'house' and /bandáko/, 'houses', but the N-N pattern is still the dominant one for this class of noun.

The various noun classes are listed below. Note which singulars go with which plurals.

#### NOUN CLASSES

PREFIX CLASS	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
MO-BA	motu	(person)	batu
$\emptyset$ -BA	tata	(father)	batata
MO-MI	monéne	(big)	minéne
LI-MA	libángá	(rock)	mabángá
BO-MA	bobína	(dance)	mabína
LO-MA	lokolo	(leg, foot)	makolo
E-BI	ebale	(river)	bibale
LO-N	lopéte	(ring)	mpéte
MO-N	mosúki	(hair)	nsúki
N-N	nzeté	(tree)	nzeté
KO	kobóta	(to give birth to)	-----

#### 4.2 Verb Subject Prefixes

In Unit 1 the verb prefixes for animate subjects were introduced. Animate is here restricted to men and animals. In the third person animate/inanimate is distinguished. In the singular, the verb prefix is /a-/ if the subject is animate, but /e-/ if the subject is inanimate. In the plural, the verb prefix is /ba-/ if the subject is animate, but is the same as the prefix on the noun if the subject is inanimate with the exception that the inanimate N-N class has the plural verb prefix /mí-/, e.g., /ndáko mizali.../, 'the houses are...'.

If there is an adjective after a plural noun, the prefix to the verb is in concord with the adjective prefix, e.g., /mabángá/  
mínéne mizali.../, 'the big rocks are...'.

#### VERB SUBJECT PREFIXES

PERSON	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1 st	na-	to-
2 nd	o-	bo-
3rd animate	a-	ba-
3rd inanimate	e-	mí-
	e-	ma-
	e-	bí-

## CONCORD OF NOUN AND VERB PREFIXES

PERSON	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	SUBJECT	VERB	SUBJECT	VERB
3rd animate	mo-	a-	ba-	ba-
	∅-	a-	ba-	ba-
3rd inanimate	mo-	e-	ml-	ml-
	li-	e-	ma-	ma-
	bo-	e-	ma-	ma-
	lo-	e-	ma-	ma-
	lo-	e-	n-	ml-
	e-	e-	bi-	bi-
	n-	e-	n-	ml-
	ko-	e-	---	---

## CONCORD OF NOUN AND VERB PREFIXES

1. Mwána azali... The child is...
2. Bána bazali... The children are...
3. Mobálí azali... The man is...
4. Mibálí bazali... The men are...
5. Líbángá ezali... The rock is...
6. Mabángá mazali... The rocks are...
7. Mótuka ezali... The automobile is...

8. Mítuka mizali... The automobiles are...
9. Eloko ezali... The thing is...
10. Biloko bizali... The things are...
11. Ndako ezali... The house is...
12. Ndako mizali... The houses are...

In some dialects of Lingala, especially up-river from Leopoldville, the verb prefix in the third person in both the singular and the plural is the same as that of the prefix of the inanimate noun subject except that the N-N class has /e-/ sg. and /-i/ pl. for the verb suffix. Written Lingala usually follows up-river Lingala in this respect.

#### 4.3 Nasal Homorganic with Following Consonant.

*loléngé, ndéngé*

Only certain combinations of nasal consonant plus another consonant occur. A nasal consonant is homorganic with the following consonant, i.e., it is made in the same mouth position as the following consonant.

	NASAL	BEFORE CONSONANT
labial	m	p, b, f
dental	n	t, d, s, z
velar	ŋ	k, g

/n/ plus /l/ is /nd-/ , e.g., /loléngé/, 'kind', /ndéndé/, 'kinds'. However, the plural form of this word is often used as a collective singular.

/n/ plus /y/ is /nz/, e.g., /n-/ plus /-yémbo/ is /nzémbo/, 'song'. What is written /ny/ in the orthography as in /nyama/,

'meat', represents a single sound, an [ŋ], i.e., a palatal nasal. This sound can be approximated by pronouncing 'y' through the nose. /nz/ is a sequence of two sounds, /n/ plus /z/.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- |                            |                              |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| mobáli, mi-<br>libosó, ma- | right, male<br>front; before |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
1. Tolíngí kokéndé komóna  
bachutes. We want to go see the rapids.
2. Bazalí kokéndé komóna  
bachutes. They are about to see the rapids.
3. Bazalí komata ngómbá. They are climbing the mountain.
4. Boyébí komata ngómbá. You are acquainted with mountain climbing.
5. Boyébí ndáko ya 'President'. You know where the President's house is.
6. Namóní ndáko ya 'President'. I saw the President's house.
7. Namóní tatá ya bangó. I saw their father.
8. Natikálí na tatá ya bangó. I'm remaining with their father.
9. Natikálí na ndáko. I'm staying home.
10. Azali libosó na ndáko. He's in front of the house.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Tatá na ngái alingí komóna My father is coming to see the ndáko. house right away.
2. Mamá na bísu alingí komóna Our mother is coming to see the ndáko. house right away.

3. Mamá na bísu akotíkala na ndáko. Our mother will stay in the house.
4. Mwána moké akotíkala na ndáko. The small child will stay in the house.
5. Mwána moké azali na libángá. The small child has a rock.
6. Mobálí na yé azali na libángá. Her husband has a rock.
7. Mobálí na yé azali libosó na ndáko. Her husband is in front of the house.
8. Bána ya yó bazalí libosó na ndáko. Your children are in front of the house.
9. Bána na yó bazalí kolámba nsósó. Your children are cooking chicken.
10. Básí bazalí kolámba nsósó. The women are cooking chicken.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nazalí na ndáko. I'm at home.
2. Nazalí na ndáko. I have a house.
3. Nazalí na bána míbale. I have two children.
4. Azali mama ya bána míbale. She is the mother of two children.
5. Azali mama ya tatá na yó. She is your father's mother.
6. Leló tomóní tatá na yó. Today we saw your father.
7. Leló tomóní mabángá ndéngé na ndéngé. Today we saw all kinds of rocks.
8. Na nsíma okomóna na lobóko ya mwási mabángá ndéngé. Then you will see all sorts of rocks on the left.  
na ndéngé.

9. Na nsima okomóna na lobóko  
ya mwásí ndáko ya bangó. Then you will see their house on the left.
10. Na libosó okomóna na lobóko  
ya mobálí ndáko ya bangó. Before that you will see their house on the right.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize the verbs.

1. Mwána moké akotikala na ndáko.  
Bána miké bakotikala na ndáko. The small child will stay in the house.  
The small children will stay in the houses.
2. Tatá na ngái alingí komóna ndáko.  
Bata tá na bísu balingí komóna ndáko. My father is coming to see the house.  
Our fathers are coming to see the houses.
3. Mobálí na yé azalí na libángá.  
Mibálí na bangó bazali na mabángá. Her husband has a rock.  
Their husbands have rocks.
4. Mamá na yo akolámba nyama.  
Bamamá na bínu bakolámba nyama. Your mother will prepare the meat.  
Your mothers will prepare the meats.
5. Azalí mwána malámu.  
Bazalí bána malámu. She is a good child.  
They are good children.
6. Azalí tata ya ngái.  
Bazalí batata ya bísu. He is our father.  
They are our fathers.

7. Nayóki mwána na yé ya  
mobálí té.  
Toyóki bána na bangó ya  
mibálí té.
8. Balobaka ndinga níni na  
Leó?  
Balobaka ndinga níni na  
Leó?
9. Mamá na ngái aákotíkala  
na mwána.  
Bamamá na bísu baákotíkala  
na bána.
10. Libángá moké ezalí libosó  
ya ndáko.  
Mabángá miké mizalí libosó  
ya ndáko.
- I didn't understand his son.  
We didn't understand their  
sons.
- What language is spoken at  
Leopoldville?
- What languages are spoken at  
Leopoldville?
- My mother is staying with the  
child.
- Our mothers are staying with  
the children.
- There is a little rock in  
front of the house.
- There are little stones in  
front of the house.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize the verbs.

1. Mobálí azalí na lopéte moké.  
Mibálí bazalí na mpéte miké.
2. Libángá monéne ezalí na  
esíka óyo.  
Mabángá minéne mizalí na  
esíka óyo.
3. Mwásí azalí libosó ya libángá  
monéne.
- The man has a little ring.  
The men have little rings.
- There is a big rock at this  
place.
- There are big rocks at this  
place.
- The woman is in front of a  
big rock.

	Bási bazalí liboso ya mabángá míne.	The women are in front of big rocks.
4.	Mwána azalí na lobókó ya mwásí ya ndáko.	The child is on the left side of the house.
	Bána bazalí na lobókó ya mwásí ya ndáko.	The children are on the left side of the house.
5.	Motu akofúnga línínisa.  Batu bakofúnga manínisa.	Someone will close the window.  Some people will close the windows.
6.	Mwána ya mobálí aákozóngisa na motúna.  Bána ya mibálí baákozóngisa na mitúna.	The boy is asking a question.  The boys are asking questions.
7.	Mwásí ayókaka mobálí na yé.  Bási bayókaka mibálí na bangó.	The woman obeys her husband.  The women obey their husbands.
8.	Nzete ezalí nsíma ya ndáko.  Nzete mizalí nsíma ya ndáko.	There is a tree behind the house.  There are trees behind the house(s).
9.	Mwána mwásí akeí na bobína.  Bána bási bakeí na mabína.	The girl went to a dance.  The girls went to dances.
10.	Motu akangi búuku.  Batu bakangi babúuku.	Someone has closed (his) book.  Some people have closed (their) books.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mwásí na ngái ayébi ndáko. My wife knows where the house is.
2. Mwásí na ngái azali na ndáko mibale. My wife owns two houses.
3. Tatá na bisú azali na ndáko mibale. Our father has two houses.
4. Tatá na bisú azali na lobókó ya mobálí ya ndáko. Our father is on the right side of the house.
5. Bána na binú bazalí na lobókó ya mobálí ya ndáko. Your children are on the right side of the house.
6. Bána na binú balingí kolía na nsima na ndáko. Your children want to eat behind the house.
7. Batu nyónso balingí kolía na nsima na ndáko. Everyone wants to eat in back of the house.
8. Batu nyónso batélémi libosó na ndáko. Everyone is standing in front of the house.
9. Bána miké batélémi libosó na ndáko. The small children have stopped before the house.
10. Bána miké bazali komata mwáa ngómbá. The little children are climbing the hill.

## 4.4 Adjectives

Lingala has only a few adjectives, but is in the process of developing several new ones. An adjective follows the noun it modifies, e.g., /mwána moke/, 'a small child'. New adjectival constructions are formed by /ya/, /mwána ya mobálí/, 'male child', 'son'. Many such constructions now regularly occur without /ya/, so that /mwána mobálí/, 'male child', 'son', is now the preferred form for many younger persons.

Nearly all adjectives are invariable, but there are a few which are marked for singular and plural, such as /moke/, /mike/.

#### 4.5 Prominence of Initial Sentence Position.

For emphasis an element of a sentence may be placed initially, e.g., /Leló tomóní tata na yo/, 'Today we saw your father'. This gives an additional bit of emphasis to /leló/, 'today', in contrast to some other day.

## Unit 5

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Ozali' kokende wápi? Where are you going?

-B-

mosálá, mi- work, job, trade, occupation

2. Nazali' kokende na mosálá. I'm on my way to work.

-A-

-sála to work, do, make, till,  
farm

3. Osálaka wápi? Where do you work?

-B-

'mécanicien' mechanic

CEGEAC C.E.G.E.A.C., a new-car  
dealer that imports  
American-made cars

4. Ngai', nazali' mécanicien Me, I'm a mechanic at CEGEAC.  
na CEGEAC.

-A-

-banda to start, commence; since

5. Mosálá ya bínú ebandaka What time do you begin work?  
ntángu nini?

-B-

ngonga, n- time, hour, bell, gong,  
clock

nsambo seven

ntóngó, n- morning, forenoon

6. Mosálá ya bísu ebandaka na Our work starts at seven in the  
 ngonga ya nsambo na morning.  
 ntóngó

-A-

7. Nakoki koyeba esíka Might I know where you work?  
 osálaka té?

-B-

'secrétaire' secretary

'ambassade' embassy

8. Ngai, nazali secrétaire Me, I'm a secretary at the  
 na ambassade ya Amérique. American Embassy.

-A-

áwa here

mokolo, mi- day

9. Oyáki áwa mokolo nini? When did you arrive?

-B-

mpóso week, Saturday; salary, pay

mísato, misátu three

10. Oyo mpóso ya misátu. This is my third week.

-A-

-solola to talk, converse, speak,  
 tell

mpó, mpoo, m- thing, affair, matter;  
 because, on account of

mbángo, mbángu, m- speed, swiftness

11. Malámu, mokolo nini tokosolola malámu, mpoo,  
naákokénde mbángu na  
mosálá.
- Well then, we can have a chat one of these days; but now I'm in a hurry to get to work.

## -B-

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| -pésa  | to give, provide with                          |
| numeró (número)  | number   |
| -yébisa  | advise, inform, make known                     |
| 12. Pésa ngái numeró ya<br>telephone na yó, mpó<br>nayébisa yó mokolo. | Give me your telephone number so I'll have it. |

## -A-

13. Numeró quatre-vingts  
trois, cinquante deux.
- 8352.

## NUMERALS

mókó	one
míbale	two
mísáto, mísatu	three
minei	four
mítáno, mítánu	five
motóbá	six
nsambo	seven
mwambe, mwambi	eight
libwá	nine

zómi	ten
zómi na mókó	eleven
zómi na mibale	twelve
ntúkú mibale	twenty
ntúkú mibale na mókó	twenty-one
ntúkú misáto	thirty
ntúkú misáto na mibale	thirty-two
ntúkú minei	forty
nkámá, monkámá, mokámá, (mi-)	hundred
nkáma mitáno	five hundred
nkótó	thousand
nkótó nsambo	seven thousand

## NOTES

## 5.1 Nouns of deed or action, type 1.

A limited number of nouns meaning the act or deed of the verb base are formed by the M0-MI prefix class plus a high-tone /-á/ suffix, e.g., /mosálá/, 'work', 'job', 'occupation'.

## 5.2 Independent or Emphatic Subject Pronouns .

Ngái, nazalí 'mécanicien' na CEGEAC.

In Unit 1 the independent pronouns were introduced with the tones they have in possessive constructions. All independent pronouns except /ngái/ are invariable; but when an independent or emphatic subject /ngái/ is /ngái/, as in /Ngái, nazalí 'mécanicien' na CEGEAC/, 'Me, I'm a mechanic at CEGEAC.'

## 5.3 Very Polite Questions and Requests

Nakoki koyéba esíká osálaka té?

To ask a question or make a request in a very polite way, /-kokí/ prefacing the question or request, which is expressed with an infinitive, and /té/ occurs at the very end, e.g., /Nakoki koyéba esíká osálalaka té?/, 'Might I know where you work?', 'Would you be so kind as to tell me where you work?'

## 5.4 Vowel harmony in noun prefixes.

mokolo

When a noun prefix containing a mid vowel occurs before a secondary vowel in the first syllable of a base, the prefix vowel is for many younger speakers low mid, e.g., /mokolo/, 'day', except the infinitive which has a primary vowel in the prefix, e.g., /komóno/, 'to see'.

## 5.5 Recent Past: Recent Past Progressive

okákí áwa mokolo níní?

The combination of the extension /-ák-/ and the perfective suffix /-í/ forms the recent past. The recent past most often refers to something which took place no later than the day before yesterday but within the last month; however, if the speaker considers the event to have happened recently, the recent past may refer to a few months ago, or in some cases even a few years ago. Likewise, it may refer to a time later than the day before yesterday if the speaker wants to imply recentness but not something which has just taken place. In the example given above from the dialogue, the questioner implies that he knows that the American has arrived only recently in Leopoldville, e.g., /Oyákí áwa mokolo níní?/, 'When did you arrive?', 'You have arrived only recently, haven't you?'.

For verbs of state or existence, the recent past implies a state existing in or arrived at in the recent past, e.g., /nayébáki/, 'I knew', 'I came to know', or /ekokáki/, 'it was enough', 'it came to be sufficient'.

The recent past often indicates something which happened before something else in the past and thus translates like an English past perfect, e.g., /aliáki ntángu na nayáki/, 'He had eaten before I came'.

The past progressive is composed of the recent past of /-zala/ plus an infinitive, e.g., /nazaláki kolía/, 'I was eating'. The past progressive indicates something that was going on or continuing to happen for an indefinite short or temporary period, whereas the recent past indicates a point in or definite block of time, e.g., /nazaláki kolía ntángu ayáki/ 'I was eating when he came.'

#### 5.6 Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals.

mpóso ya mísatú

Cardinal numerals like other adjectives follow the noun they modify, e.g., /mpóso mísatú/, 'three weeks'; but unlike many adjectives, /ya/ may not be inserted between a numeral and the noun it modifies without a change of meaning because /ya/ plus a numeral is an ordinal, e.g., /mpóso ya mísató/, 'the third week'.

#### 5.7 Telephone Numbers

Telephone numbers are given in French in two-digit numbers, e.g., 'quatre-vingts trois, cinquante deux', '8352'.

#### 5.8 Plural of /mokáma/, 'hundred'

/mikáma/, 'hundreds', is used only in /mikáma na mikáma/, 'hundreds and hundreds'; elsewhere, the singular form is used, e.g., /mokáma nsambo/, 'seven hundred'.

Other numerals do not have plural form.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Azali kokendé wápi? Where is he going?
2. Otíki secrétaire wápi? Where did you drop off the secretary?
3. Bakendéki wápi? Where did they go?
4. Akeí wápi? Where is he going? Where has he just gone?
5. Bozalaka wápi? Where do you live?
6. Baliaka wápi? Where do you usually eat?
7. Ndáko ya bínú ezali wápi? Where is your house?
8. Osálaka wápi? Where do you work?
9. Balobaka Lingála wápi? Where is Lingála spoken?
10. Olingí kokendé wápi? Where do you want to go?  
Where are you about to go?

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nakeí mosálá I'm on the way to work.
2. Nakeí na esíka nasálaka. I'm going to the place where I work.
3. Azali mécanicien na esíka nasálaka. He is a mechanic at the place where I work.
4. Azali na ntángu malámu. He's on time.
5. Azali libosó na ntángu. He's early.
6. Azali nsíma na ntángu. He's late.
7. Azali kokendé mbángu na mosálá? He's hurrying to work.
8. Secrétaire azali kokendé mbángu na mosálá. The secretary is hurrying to work.

9. Secrétaire azaláki kosolola na ngái. The secretary was talking to me.
10. Mecanicien azaláki kosolola na ngái. The mechanic was talking to me.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Ozaláki kokéndé wápi? Where were you going?
2. Ozaláki komóno níní? What were you looking at?
3. Olingáki komóno níní? What did you want to see?
4. Olingáki kokéndé komóno monument ya Stanley? Did you want to go see the monument to Stanley?
5. Bazaláki kokende komóno monument ya Stanley? Were they going to see the monument to Stanley?
6. Bazaláki kokende kolámba mbisi? Were they leaving to fix the fish?
7. Mwána azaláki kokende kolámba mbisi? Was the child leaving to fix the fish?
8. Mwána azaláki na mpóndu ná nyama. Did the child have manioc leaves and meat?
9. Mama na yó azaláki na mpóndu ná nyama? Did your mother have manioc leaves and meat?
10. Mama na yó akotíkala na ndako? Is your mother going to stay in the house?

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

Read the numbers horizontally.

a)	18	80	28	b)	40	50	4	5
	17	70	27		14	15	45	54
	16	60	26		60	70	6	7
	15	50	25		16	17	67	76
	14	40	24		20	30	2	3

c)	19	90	29	d)	36	63	33	66
	16	15	13		25	52	22	55
	20	50	40		67	76	77	66
	25	22	27		19	99	9	11
	38	68	18		8	88	38	78

e)	200	102	202	f)	200	300	400
	600	604	640		1500	1600	1700
	317	307	371		1808	1919	2000
	869	879	829		1962	2116	2473
	403	402	430		8217	5353	4962

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Read the following times in Lingala according to the model given below.

-koma to arrive; become; begin

minútu, miníti, minúti minute(s)

Tokomi na ngonga ya mókó na It's 1:20  
minútú ntúku mibale.

6:20	10:55
5:10	11:55
2:00	7:35
4:05	2:10
12:30	6:25
7:15	12:50

8:40	9:00
9:50	4:30
1:05	5:45
3:35	3:50

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

-bakisa

to add

-longola

to take away, remove

1. Mókó bakísá mókó, ekóki  
mibale. One and one is two.
2. Mítano bakísá misáto,  
ekoki mwambe. Five and three is eight.
3. Nsambo bakísá libwá, ekóki  
zómi na motóba. Seven and nine is sixteen.
4. Mínei bakísá mibale, ekóki  
motóba. Four and two is six.
5. Libwá bakísá motóba, ekóki  
zómi na mitáno. Nine and six is fifteen.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Mibale longólá mókó,  
etíkálí mókó. Two minus one is one.
2. Mínei longólá mibale,  
etíkálí mibale. Four minus two is two.
3. Ntukú mibale longólá  
zómi, etíkálí zómi. Twenty minus ten is ten.

4. Ntukú míšátu longólá  
ntukú mibale na mókó,  
etikálí libwá.

5. Ntukú mwambe longólá  
ntukú nsambo, etikálí  
zomi.

### 5.9 'Passive' Plural

Balobaka Lingála wápi?

That something 'is done' is often expressed by the third person plural, e.g., /Balobaka Lingála wápi?/, 'Where is Lingala spoken?', 'Where do they speak Lingala?' See also Note 10.2.

## 5.10 Adjectival Subordinate Clauses.

Nakéí na esíká nasálaka.

Adjectival subordinate clauses are not introduced by a relative, but are placed after the noun they modify just like any other adjective. Note /nasálaka/ in /Nakeí na esíká nasálaka/, 'I'm going to the place where I work.'

5.11 /kosolola na/

Secrétaire azaláki kosolola na ngái.

If followed by an object, /kosolola/ requires the particle /na/, e.g., /Secrétaire azaláki kosolola na ngái/, 'The secretary was talking to me'.

## Unit 6

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Mbóte, mwána mwásí. Good afternoon, Miss.

-B-

2. Ée, mbóte. Good afternoon.

-A-

'bureau' office

3. Óyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine? Is this Mr. Antoine's office?

-B-

mingi much, many

yangó it, they, them

4. Yangó, kási azali na mosálá mingi leló. It is, but he's very busy today.

-A-

likambo, ma- difference, dispute, case, affair

5. Nalingí náloba na yé likambo. I would like to tell him something

-B-

-lobela to speak to

te that...

6. Nalobéli yó te alingí komóno motu té leló na bureau na yé. I just told you that he doesn't want to see anyone at his office today.

- A -

-túna to ask, question

-kóta, -kóto to go/come in

7. Okokí kotúna yé te sókó Would you ask him if I can come  
alingí nákóta? in?

-B-

8. Lobéla ngái likambo olingí. Tell me what you want.

-A-

-tala	to look, look at, stare at; guard keep; concern; visit
-------	--

9. Etáli bísu mibale, yó té. It concerns only us, not you.

- B -

**-bóya** to refuse, reject, not want, despise

10. Sókó obójí, okokótá na If you refuse (to tell me), you  
bureau na yé té. can't go in.

- A -

**libótá, ma-** family, household; descent

11. Ezali likambo ya libótá na vé. It concerns his family.

- B -

*moto*, *moto*, *ba-* person, human being,  
man; one, someone,  
somebody

-kúfa to die

12. Motu mōkō akūfi? Has someone died?

## -A-

nókó, ba-	maternal uncle (see Note 19.3.)
mpásí, m-	sickness, suffering, pain, misery, difficulty
makásí	strong, hard, difficult, troublesome

13. Nókó na yé azali na mpásí His uncle is gravely ill.  
makásí.

## -B-

too	or
lopítalo, <sup>o</sup> balopítalo (l'hôpital)	hospital
14. Azali wápi, na ndáko too na lopítalo?	Where is he, at home or at the hospital?

## -A-

síka	now, just now, new, recent
15. Bakeí na yé na lopítalo síka óyo.	They have taken him to the hospital just now.

## -B-

-zila	to wait, wait for
16. Zilá nayébisa yé.	Wait and I'll tell him.

## -A-

17. Melesi.	Thanks.
-------------	---------

## -B-

18. Likambo té.	You are welcome. Don't mention it. It's nothing.
-----------------	---

## USEFUL PHRASES

Mokolo ezali malamu.	The weather is nice.
Likolo ezali malamu.	The sky is clear.
Mokolo ezali mabé.	The weather is bad.
Likolo ezali mabé.	The sky is cloudy.
Leló mpió mingi.	It's cold today.
Leló mpió makásı.	It's cold today.
Leló mói mingi.	It's hot today.
Leló mói makásı.	It's hot today.
Leló molunge míngi.	It's hot today. It's stifling today.
Likolo eyéí kitóko.	It's clearing up.
Likolo eyéí mabé.	It's clouding up.
Mbúla ezali konóko.	It's raining.
Mbúla eékonóko.	It's raining.
likolo, ma-	sky, heaven; upstream; outside, exterior; on top, over, on, above; surface; because of
mabé	bad, evil, ugly
mpió, m-	cold
mói	sun, sunlight, daylight, the heat of the sun
molunge, mi-	warmth, heat; fever, sweat; stifling
kitóko	beautiful, pretty, fine; delicious, clean, neat

---

mbula, m-	rain, year, rainy season
-nó, -nóko	to rain

### 6.1 Equational Sentences

Oyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?

Equational sentences are sentences which have no verb in which (1) two nouns are equated, e.g., /Mosálá na ngái mécanicien/, 'I am a mechanic,' (2) a pronoun and noun are equated, e.g., /Oyo bureau ya Monsieur Antoine?/, 'Is this Mr. Antoine's office? or (3) possession is demonstrative, e.g., /Ndáko ya tata na bangó/, 'The house belongs to their father'. In all three types there is an optional and equally current expression with the same meaning in which the two parts of the equation are linked by /-zali/, e.g., /Mosálá na ngái ezali mécanicien/, 'I am a mechanic'.

### 6.2 Non-animate Independent Pronouns

Yangó

In Unit I the independent forms of the animate pronoun were introduced. There is also an independent inanimate pronoun /yangó/, 'it', 'they', 'them', which has the same form for singular and plural, e.g., /Pésá yé yangó/, 'Give it to him', 'Give them to him'.

### 6.3 Subjunctive

Nalingí náloba na yé likambó.

The subjunctive is marked by a high tone on the pronoun prefix and a low tone imperfective suffix, e.g., /náloba/, 'that I talk', as in /Nalingí náloba na yé likambó/, 'I would like to tell him something', literally, 'I want that I tell to him something'. Using the subjunctive is a very polite way of making a request, 'I want to tell him something', would be construed with an infinitive after /-linga/, as in /Nalingí koloba na yé likambo/.

The subjunctive is also used as an imperative, e.g., /Bólía/, 'Eat' (speaking to more than one person), or as a cohortative, e.g., /Tólia/, 'Let's eat'.

The subjunctive is also used to ascertain what another person wants done, e.g., /Nália?/, 'Do you want me to eat?' or 'Do you think I should eat?'

To indicate obligation, i.e., 'should', 'ought to', /ekoki/ plus the subjunctive is used, e.g., /Ekoki ákende/, 'He should go', 'He ought to go', 'It is fitting that he go'.

#### 6.4 Applicative Suffix

Nalobélí yó

The applicative suffix /-el-/ means 'to do something for or to someone', e.g., /nalobélí yó/, 'I told (to) you'. The same meaning can be expressed by /na/ as by /-el-/, e.g., /nalobi na yó/, 'I told (to) you'.

#### 6.5 Indirect Discourse: Particle /te/.

Nalobélí yó te alingí komóno motu té.

Indirect discourse is often introduced by the optional particle /te/, 'that', as in /Nalobélí yó te alingí komóno motu té/, 'I told you that he didn't want to see anyone.' /te/, 'that', is //te// to distinguish it from /té/, 'not', which is //te//.

/te/ sometimes occurs in indirect discourse even if there is another particle at the beginning of the dependent clause, e.g., /Okokí kotúna yé te sókó olingí nákóta?/, 'Can you ask him (that) if I can come in?'

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Mosálá na yo nini? What's your occupation?
2. Mosálá na ngái mécanicien. I am a mechanic.
3. Ndáko ya mécanicien. The house belongs to the mechanic.
4. Ndáko ya tata na bangó. The house belongs to their father.
5. Azali tata na bangó. He is their father.
6. Azali kokende na mosálá. He is on his way to work. He has (already) left for work.
7. Nalingí kokende na mosálá. I'm about to leave for work.
8. Nalingí kokende kozwá nyama. I want to get some meat.
9. Báná bazali kokende kozwá nyama. The children are going to get some meat.
10. Báná bazali komata mabángá. The children are climbing the rocks.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Óyo buréau ya Monsieur Zóla. This is Mr. Zola's office.
2. Óyo ndáko ya Monsieur Zóla. This is Mr. Zola's house.
3. Óyo ndáko monéne. This is a big house.
4. Pésá ye ya monéne. Give him the big one.
5. Pésá ye mosálá. Give him a job.
6. Tozali kokende na mosala We are going to work.
7. Tozali kokende kotúna ye. We are going to ask him.
8. Mwásí akoki kotúna ye. The woman can ask him.

9. Mwási akoki kobóya koloba  
na mobálí. The woman can refuse to talk  
to the man.
10. Mwána azali kobóya koloba  
na mobálí. The child is going to refuse  
to speak to the man.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nalobéli yó te nazalí na  
mosálá. I just told you that I'm busy.
2. Nalobéli yé ázila. I told him to wait.
3. Túná yé ázila. Ask him to wait.
4. Túná bango bákota. Ask them to come in.
5. Alíngí bangó bákota. He wants them to come in.
6. Alíngí kokendé na ndáko. He wants to go home.
7. Alíngí ákendé na ndáko. He's leaving for home right  
away.
8. Alíngí áyéba likambo níní  
ezali. He wants to know what it is.
9. Alíngí áyéba sókó okoki  
kosála yangó. He wants to know if you can  
do it.
10. Alíngí áyéba sókó osálaka  
na CEGEAC. He wants to know if you work  
at C.E.G.E.A.C.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Tókendé kolia. Let's go eat.
2. Tókendé kozwela yé nyama. Let's go get him some meat.
3. Tókendé na ndáko. Let's go home.

4. Tólía na ndáko. Let's eat at home.  
 5. Tólía libosó ya kokende. Let's eat before going.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Balingí báloba na yo. They would like to talk to you.  
 2. Balingí koloba na yo. They want to talk to you.  
 3. Balingí kokende na yo. They want to go with you.  
 4. Balingí bákende na yo. They would like to go with you.  
 5. Balingí kolia na yo. They want to eat with you.  
 6. Balingí bália na yo. They would like to eat with you.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mosálá na yo nini? What's your occupation?  
 2. Mosálá na yo mécanicien. You are a mechanic.  
 3. Mosálá na yo ezalí makásı. Your work is difficult.  
 4. Ndáko óyo ezalí makásı. This house is well-built.  
 5. Ndáko óyo ezalí ya tata  
 ya bangó. This house belongs to their father.  
 6. Óyo ndako ya tata ya bangó. This is their father's house.  
 7. Kendé kolobelá tata ya  
 bangó. Go talk to their father.  
 Go talk on behalf of their father.  
 8. Kendé kolobelá ye te  
 motu mókó akúfi. Go tell him a member of his family has died.  
 9. Kendé kotúna ye sókó  
 motu mókó akúfi. Go ask him if a member of his family has died.  
 10. Kendé kotúna ye sókó azali  
 na ndáko too na lopitálo. Go ask him if she is at home or at the hospital.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Nalingí náloba na ye likambo. I would like to tell him something.
2. Nalingí ayáa kotála ngái. I want him to come see me.
3. Nalingí óyébisa ye. I want you to inform him.
4. Zilá óyébisa ye. Wait to advise him.
5. Zilá ótúna ye. Wait to ask him.
6. Alingí ótúna ye. He wants you to ask her.
7. Alingí ália sika óyo. He would like to eat right away.
8. Atúní ália sika óyo. He asked to eat right away.
9. Atúní ngái náyáa. He asked me to come.
10. Batúní ngái náyáa. I was asked to come.

## Unit 7

## Basic Sentences

Na zándo

At the market.

## -A-

téke, -téka

to sell

litungúlu, ma-

onion, leek

bóni

how much, how many

1. Tata, otéka matungúlu  
nsambo bóni? How much are you asking for  
seven onions? What do you  
want for seven onions?

## -B-

falánga, falánka (franc)

franc(s)

2. Óyo ya minéne falánga zómi na motóbá. The big ones are sixteen francs.

## -A-

bóongó

thus, so, likewise,  
therefore

3. Bóongó, ya mike? And the little ones?

## -B-

4. Falánga mwambí. Eight francs.

## -A-

5. Nalingí mibalé ya minéne na minei ya mike. I'd like two big ones and four  
little ones.

## -B-

6. Nákanga motóbá? Should I wrap up the six?

## -A-

7. Ée. Yes.

## -B-

8. Pésá falángá nsambo. That will be seven francs.

-sómba to buy  
pilipíli red pepper; (black pepper)

9. Osóm̄ba pilipíli té? Don't you want to buy any  
peppers?

-luka to hunt, search for  
-lukela to get for someone  
mpáta five-franc piece  
matabísí (matabiche) tip, gratuity, advantage,  
profit, matabiche, something extra given as an  
incentive to buy

10. Lukélá ngái ya malám̄u, Pick me out some good ones for  
ya mpáta mibalé, ná ten francs. Also add the  
matabísí.

## -B-

-zónga to go/come back  
11. Leló matabísí ezalí té, There's no matabiche today,  
zóngá lóbí. come back tomorrow.

## USEFUL PHRASES

- Mwásí na ngái akoyáa leló My wife is coming this morning.  
na ntóngó.
- Mwásí na ngái akoyáa leló My wife is coming this afternoon.  
na mpókwa.

3. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa ləlō My wife is coming tonight.  
na butú.
4. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa ləlō My wife is coming at noon.  
na mídi.
5. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa ləlō My wife is coming at midnight.  
na mídi ya butú.
6. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa na My wife will arrive this week.  
mpóso óyo.
7. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa na My wife will arrive this month.  
sánzá óyo.
8. Mwásí na ngái akoyáa lóbi My wife will arrive the day  
ekoyáa. after tomorrow.
9. Mwásí na ngái ayákí lóbi My wife arrived the day before  
elekí. yesterday.
10. Mwásí na ngái ayákí na My wife arrived last week.  
mpóso elekí.
- ntóngó, n- morning, forenoon (5-11)
- mídi noon (11-2)
- mpókwa, n- afternoon (2-6)
- butú night (6-5)
- mídi ya butú midnight (11-1)
- sánzá moon, month
- leka to go past, past by; die;  
surpass, excel, be more  
than

## 7.1 Desiderative

otéka matungúlu nsambo bóni?

The desiderative is marked by a low tone imperfective suffix and means 'to want to', 'to expect to', 'to care to', /Otéka matungúlu nsambo bóni?/, 'What do you want for seven onions?', 'What do you expect to get for seven onions?', or /olia/, 'Do you want to eat?', 'Would you care to eat?', 'Would you care for something to eat?', 'You want/would like to eat...'

## 7.2 Nominalization of Adjectives

Both single-word and phrasal adjectives are nominalized by the particle /ya/, e.g., /ya Monsieur Antoine/, 'Mr. Antoine's', /ya ngái/, 'mine', and /ya monéne/, 'a big one'. Nominalized adjectives occur in the sentence like any other noun, e.g., /Ya monéne ezali kitóko/, 'The big one is beautiful'. In the plural, the verb prefix is /bi-/ or sometimes /mi-/, e.g., /Ya minéne bízali kitóko/, 'The big ones are beautiful'.

## PATTERN DRILL 1

náni

who

1. Lobélá ngái likambo olingí. Tell me what you want.
2. Lobélá ngái akendéki wápi. Tell me where he went.
3. Lobélá ngái azali wápi. Tell me where he is.
4. Lobélá ngái azali náni. Tell me who he is.
5. Lobélá ngái sókó azali na ndáko. Tell me if he is home.
6. Lobélá ngái likambo óyo asálí. Tell me what he did.
7. Lobélá ngái sókí olingí kolia. Tell me if you want to eat.

8. Lobélá ngái, mama na yo azali malamu. Tell me how your mother is.
9. Lobélá ngái, okoyaa lobi na ndako ya ngái. Tell me if you're coming to my house tomorrow.
10. Lobélá ngái, oyaki áwa ntango nini. Tell me when you arrived.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Nakotéke ndako na ngái. I will sell my house.
2. Nakotékélé yo ndako na ngái. I will sell my house to you.
3. Nakotékélé yo matungulu. I will sell you some onions.
4. Akosómba matungulu. He will buy some onions.
5. Akosómba loso na yo. He will buy rice from you.
6. Bakotíkala na loso na yo. They will keep your rice.
7. Bakotíkala na mbisi na yo. They will look after the fish for you.
8. Tokosómbela yo mbisi. We will buy the fish for you.
9. Tokosómbela yo nsósó. We will buy the chicken for you.
10. Akokangela yo nsósó. He'll wrap up the chicken for you.

## QUESTION AND ANSWER DRILL 1

1. Óyo ya minéne bóni?  
Óyo ya minéne mpata minei. How much are the big ones?  
The big ones are twenty francs.
2. Óyo ya miké bóni?  
Óyo ya miké falánga zomi. How much are the small ones?  
The small ones are ten francs.

3. Náni asómbélí yó matungúlu? Who paid you for the onions?  
Mwásí óyo asómbélí ngái This woman paid me for the  
matungúlu. onions.
4. Ntango nini asómbélí yó matungúlu? When did she pay you for the onions?  
Asómbélí ngái yangó lóbí. She paid me for them yesterday.
5. Osombáki nini? What did you buy?  
Nasombáki pilipíli. I bought some peppers.
6. Matabísí nini olingí ópésa ngái? What matabiche will (would) you give me?  
Nalingí nápésa yó pilipíli misátu. I'll (I'd) give you three peppers.
7. Olingí nápésa yó bóni? How many would you like?  
Nalingí ópésa ngái zómí. I'd like ten.
8. Nakanga yangó? Should I wrap them?  
Sókó olingí, kangá yangó. Please wrap them.
9. Osombáki nyama yangó ntangú nini? When did you buy that meat?  
Nasombáki yangó leló. I bought it today.
10. Nakoki kosomba pilipíli zómí falánga bóni? How much will ten peppers cost?  
Okoki kosomba falánga zómí na mibale. You can buy (them) for twelve francs.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

<i>etabe, bi-</i>	banana
<i>lilala, ma-</i>	orange
<i>madésu</i>	beans
<i>mbálá, m-</i>	potato
1. <i>Mwásí azalí na madésu ya minéné.</i>	The woman has large beans.
2. <i>Nasómbáki madésu ya minéné.</i>	I bought some large beans.
3. <i>Nasómbáki <u>bitabe ná matungúlu.</u></i>	I bought some bananas and some onions.
4. <i>Mwána mobálí azalákí kotéka bitabe ná matungúlu.</i>	The boy was selling bananas and onions.
5. <i>Mwána mobálí azalákí kotéka <u>pilipili.</u></i>	The boy was selling peppers.
6. <i>Moto mókó akangéli ngái pilipili.</i>	Someone wrapped up the peppers for me.
7. <i>Moto mókó atékéli ye malála ya malamu.</i>	Somebody sold him some nice oranges.
8. <i>Lukélá ngái malála ya malamu.</i>	Pick me out some nice oranges.
9. <i>Lukélá ngái mbálá ya minéné.</i>	Pick me out some large potatoes.
10. <i>Nakanga mbálá ya minéné?</i>	Shall I wrap up the large potatoes.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. *Ósómbela ngái matungúlu ya mpáta mibalé.* Buy me ten franc's worth of onions.
2. *Ósómbela ngái mbisi na magazini.* Buy me some fish at the store.

3. Naákozila yo na magazini. I'll be waiting for you at the store.
4. Naákozila yo na ndáko ya  
Polo. I'll be waiting for you at Paul's house.
5. Alingí ásomba ndáko ya Polo. He would like to buy Paul's house.
6. Alingí ásomba madesu na yo  
nyónso. He'd like to buy all of your beans.
7. Akokí kosomba madesu na yo  
nyónso. He can sell all of your beans.
8. Akokí kosomba losó na tata  
ngái. He can sell the rice to my father.
9. Akokákí kotéke ya mike té. He couldn't sell the little ones.
10. Akokákí kokanga ya minéne  
té. He couldn't wrap up the big ones.

## PATTERN DRILL 2

1. Lukélá ngái misátu ya malámu. Pick me out three good ones.
2. Lukélá ngái minei ya minéne. Pick me out four big ones.
3. Lukélá ngái mítánu ya mike. Pick me out five little ones.
4. Kangélá ngái mítánu ya mike. Wrap me up five little ones.
5. Ósómbela ngái mítánu ya mike. Sell me five little ones.
6. Ósómbela ngái matungúlu ya  
mpáta mibale. Sell me the onion for ten francs.
7. Ósómbela ngái yangó lóbí. Buy them for me tomorrow.
8. Osómbéli ngái yangó lóbí. You bought them for me yesterday.

9. Nalingí napésa yó yangó lóbí. I'd like to give them to you tomorrow.
10. Nalingí opésa ngái falánga zómí. I want you to give me ten francs.

## PATTERN DRILL 3

1. Olia etabe?  
Ee, nalia etabe. Would you care for a banana?  
 Yes, I'd like a banana.
2. Otéka madésu té?  
Té, kásí natéka malála. Don't you want to sell the beans?  
 No, but I'd like to sell the oranges.
3. Oyaa na ngái na Kisangani?  
Ee, nalingí koyaa na yó na Kisangani. Do you want to go to Stanleyville with me?  
 Yes, I'd like to go to Stanleyville with you.
4. Asómba mbálá?  
Ee, asómba mbálá. Would he like to buy some potatoes?  
 Yes, he'd like to buy some potatoes.

## 7.3 Interrogative relative pronouns

Lobélá ngái akendéki wápi.

Interrogative relative pronouns occur at the end of the subordinate clause, e.g., /Lobélá ngái akendéki wápi/, 'Tell me where he went', literally, 'Tell me he went where.'

## 7.4 Potential Juncture Before Relative Clauses

Lobélá ngái, oyáki áwa ntango nini.

There is a potential juncture, i.e., optional pause, between

the main and subordinate clauses. This juncture is marked by a comma / , /. The juncture nearly always occurs if the subordinate clause has more than about seven or eight syllables.

#### 7.5 /-tikala/ Plus Object

Bakotíkala na lóso na yó.

/-tikala/ has the particle /na/ if followed by an object, e.g., /Bakotíkala na lóso na yó/, 'They will keep your rice.'

#### 7.6 Please

Sókó olíngí, kangá yangó.

/Sókó olíngí/, 'If you are willing', is used for politeness, much like English 'Please,', or French 's'il vous plaît'.

## Unit 8

## Basic Sentences

## NA POMPI YA ESSENCE

## AT THE FILLING STATION

- 1 -

-tiya	to put, put in, set, pour in
-tiela, -tiyela, -tila	to put for (someone)
'litre'	liter
'essence'	gasoline
1. Mwána, tiélá ngái litres mítánu ya essence, sókó olíngí.	Boy, put in five liters of gasoline for me, please.
-B-	
méyá, loméyá	50-centime piece
2. Pésá mpáta míbalé na méyá.	That will be 12.5 francs (12,5F.).
-A-	
mafúta	oil, grease, fat
mái	water
3. Na nsíma tálá mafúta ná máí.	After that, look at the oil and water.

- B -

## -A-

linzanza, ma- metal box, tin can,  
iron sheet

5. Tiya linzanza moko ya ntukú Put in a 50-centiliter can.  
mitánu centilitres.

## -B-

lisusu again, besides, else, other

6. Boongó na nsima násala What else can I do for you?  
lisusu nini?

## -A-

-bongo, -bonga to be suitable, be in  
order, come along well

-bongisa to put in order, arrange,  
prepare, repair,  
straighten, organize

lokolo, ma- leg, foot; tire, wheel

wána, wáana that; there

-zánga to be lacking, miss, be  
without; be absent, skip,  
miss, omit

mopepe, mi- air, wind

7. Óbongisa lokolo wána ya Fix that back tire that is flat.  
nsima ezángi mopepe. Have that back tire fixed that  
is flat.

## -B-

8. Boongó, okozila mwáa moké. All right, (but) you will (have  
to) wait a little while.

## -A-

9. Té nakeí, nakozónga na nsima. No, I'm leaving, I'll come back  
later.

## USEFUL PHRASES

Ayébi kotambwisa mótuka.	He knows how to drive.
Ayébi epái bakoki kozwá ebendé ya mótuka.	He knows where you can get automobile parts.
Ayébi ndéngé ya kobongisa mótuka.	He knows how to repair automobiles.
Ayébi likambo ntína.	He understands the matter.
Nasílí kosukola mótuka.	I've already washed the car.
Nasílí nasukólí mótuka.	I've just now finished washing the car.
Nautí kosukola mótuka.	I've just this instant finished washing the car.
Mésa óyo ebongí na ngái.	This table is suitable for me.
Bilambá óyo bibongí na ngái.	These clothes look good on me.
Kítí óyo ebongí na mésa wáná.	This chair goes well with that table.
Kanga mótuka.	Lock the car.
Kangólá mótuka.	Unlock the car.
Sémbólá Lingála, Lingála likosémbola yó.	Look after Lingala, and Lingala will look after you.
-tambola	to take a walk, travel move, make progress, hurry up
-tambwisa	to cause to progress, drive a car, spread put in motion, start

mótuka, mi-	automobile, truck
epái, bi-	side; part; direction; district; where
ebendé, bi-	piece of metal, iron, coin, metal part
ntina, n-	root; basis; meaning reason, significance, principle
ntina na	because of, on account of, therefore
-sukola	to wash, clean; tell someone off
-úta	to come from, be on the way from
úta (see Note 8.9.)	from, since
mésa	table
kítí	chair
-kangola	to release, let go of, loose, open, unroll, unlock, unfasten
-sém̄ba	to extend, be right, be upright
-sém̄bola	to put right, straighten up, make vertical

## NOTES

## 8.1 Vowel and Semi-vowel Elision.

/y/ between vowels is often elided, e.g., /-tiyela/, 'to put for someone,' is often /-tiela/.

/e/ after /i/ is often elided, e.g., /-tiela/ is often /-tila/.

## 8.2 Reversive

The reversive extension /-ol-/ has two functions: (1) negative, and (2) directive. (1) The negative reversive indicates the opposite or negative of the verb base, e.g., /-kanga/, 'to fasten', 'lock', 'hold', /-kangola/, 'to unfasten', 'unlock', 'release'. (2) The directive reversive indicates direction away from or off of, e.g., /-kaba/, 'to give', 'state', 'divide', 'shave', /-kabola/, 'to hand out', 'distribute', 'divide up', 'separate' /-palola/, 'to skin', 'peel', 'scrape (off)', /-pasola/ 'to tear (off)', 'cleave', 'split (off)', 'saw', 'clear (away)', /-papola/, 'to make thinner', 'shave off', 'remove an excess'.

## 8.3 Reversive Stative

The extension /-w-/ before a vowel or /-u-/ before a consonant marks existence in the reverse state of the base, e.g., /-kangwa/, 'to be open(ed)', 'be unlocked', or /-sembwa/, 'to be in an upright position', -pasuka/, 'be worn out'. Though the reversive stative suffix occurs with many common bases, the student should avoid using stems with it that he has not previously seen because it is incompatible with many bases and occurs with many others only in combination with certain other extensions. This will be studied further in Notes 13.1 and 13.2.

#### 8.4 Derived Stems Without Simple Stems

There are many derived stems, i.e., base plus verbal extensions, for which there is no corresponding simple stem, i.e., base without verbal extension(s), e.g., /-yékola/, 'to study; /\*-yéka/ does not occur. Because of this the student should not make analogical back formations of simple stems from derived stems. This is especially true of derived stems with /-ol-/ or /-w-/.

#### 8.5 Causative

Óbongisa lokolo wána.

The causative extension /-is-/ means 'to cause to do', 'to make someone do', 'have someone do', e.g., /Óbongisa lokolo wána/, 'Fix that tire', 'Have that tire fixed', 'Make someone fix that tire'.

When /-is-/ occurs after a reversive extension, some stems take /-ol-/ as the reversive, others take /-w-/ , and others take both with different meanings, e.g., /-tambwisa/, 'to drive a car', but /-tambolisa/, 'to take a person for a walk'. In general, /-ol-/ is used with animate objects and /-w-/ is used with inanimate objects, but there are many exceptions.

#### 8.6 Degree of Immediate Past

In Note 2.5. the immediate past was characterized as something that has 'just' happened, but it was also shown that the period of time covered by the immediate past is often somewhat longer than what we mean in English by 'just' happened, e.g., /Nasílí kosukola mótsuka/, 'I've already washed the car', 'I've just washed the car'. This could even mean several days ago. To indicate that something has been done in the last five or ten minutes or so, one uses /Nasílí nasukólí mótsuka/, I've just now finished washing the car'. But to indicate even more immediateness, one uses /Náutí kosukola mótsuka/, 'I've just this instant finished

washing the car', literally 'I have come from washing the car', i.e., 'the last thing I did before the moment of speaking was wash the car'.

### 8.7 Proverb Concordance

Sémbólá Lingála, Lingála likosémbola yó.

Proverbs are a literary form very highly regarded in Africa. In Lingala proverbs, subject prefixes to the verb take the literary style of prefix concordances, e.g., in the proverb above the literary form /likosémbola/ occurs and not the usual form /ekosémbola/. Compare Note 4.2.

### GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Na nsíma tálá mafúta. After that, look at the oil.
2. Na libosó tálá mafúta. Before that, look at the oil.
3. Na libosó mwána atí linzanza  
mókó ya ntúku mítanu ya  
mafúta. Before that, the boy put in a 50-centiliter can of oil.
4. Nalobélí mwána átiya linzanza  
mókó ya ntúku mítanu cen-  
tilitre ya mafúta. I told the boy to put in a 50-centiliter can of oil.
5. Nalobélí mwána átiya litres  
ntúku míbalé ya essence. I told the boy to put in twenty liters of gasoline.
6. Motu wána alingí litres  
ntúku míbalé ya essence. That man wants twenty liters of gasoline.
7. Motu wána alingí bóbongisela  
yé lokolo ya mótsuka. That man wants to have his tire fixed.
8. Tata na yé alingí bóbongisela  
yé lokolo ya mótsuka. His father wants to have his tire repaired.

9. Tata na yé alingí názila yé. His father wants me to wait for him.
10. Mwásí na ngái alingí názila yé. My wife wants me to wait for her.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

Answer the questions according to the cues.

1. Okendéki ntango nini? What time did you leave?  
Nakendéki na ngonga ya minei. I left at four o'clock.
2. Osálaka nini na ntóngó? What do you do in the morning?  
Nayékolaka na ntóngó. I study mornings.
3. Oyáki mokolo nini na Leo? When did you arrive in Leopoldville?  
Nayáki na mposo eleki. I arrived last week.
4. Násala nini na nsósó óyo etikáli? What should I do with the rest of the chicken?  
Pésá yé nsósó óyo etikáli. Give him the rest of the chicken.
5. Bozaláki koloba nini? What were you talking about?  
Tozaláki koloba likambo ya basí. We are talking about women.
6. Balingí litres bóni ya essence? How many liters of gasoline do they want?  
Balingí litres ntukú misátu ya essence. They want thirty liters of gasoline.
7. Falánga bóni apésí na mwásí? How many francs did he give the woman?

- Apésí ye nkáma mókó. He gave her one hundred.
8. Otíki lokolo na mótuka  
wápi? Where did you leave the tire?
- Natíki yangó na esiká ya  
kotéka essence. I left it at the filling station.
9. Obandi mosálá? Have you started working?
- Nabandi mosálá úta ngonga  
ya mókó. I started working at one o'clock.  
I have been working since one  
o'clock.
10. Obandi mosálá ntángu níní? How long have you been working?
- Nabandi mosálá úta ngonga  
mókó. I have been working for one  
hour.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Natiísí ye mafúta na  
mótuka. I had him put some oil in the  
car.
2. Natiísí ye litres ntúkú  
mísátu ya essence. I had him put in thirty litres  
of gasoline.
3. Natiísí ye lokolo ya sika  
na mótuka. I had him put a new tire on  
my car.
4. Tosómbákí lokolo ya sika  
na mótuka. We bought a new tire for the car.
5. Tosómbákí makolo na mótuka. We bought some tires for the car.
6. Abongíséláki bisú makolo ya  
mótuka. He repaired the tires for us.
7. Abongíséláki bisú mótuka  
ntángu tozaláki komela  
Coca-Cola. He repaired the car for us while  
we were drinking a Coke.

8. Abongíséláki bísu móтука  
ntángu tozalákí kozila. He repaired the car for us while we were waiting.
9. Abongíséláki bísu móтука  
ntángu tozalákí kolía mídi. He repaired the car for us while we had lunch.
10. Abongíséláki bísu móтука  
ntángu mbúla ezalákí konóko. He repaired the car for us while it was raining.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Alobáki na mwána áloba  
lisusu. She told the child to say it again.
2. Alobáki na mwána ákanga  
ndáko. She told the child to close the door.
3. Akangísáki ndáko na mwána. She had the child close the door. She had the door closed by the child.
4. Akangísáki búuku na bána. She had the children close their books.
5. Bapésáki búuku na bána. They gave the children some books.
6. Bapésáki bínú minítí zómí  
mpó na kosilisa mosálá. They gave you ten minutes to finish the job.
7. Bapésáki ngái móтука  
mosusu ya kotámbwisa. They gave me another car to drive.
8. Nalingí móтука mosusu ya  
kotámbwisa. I need another car to drive.
9. Nalingí essence na líanza  
óyo. I want some gasoline in this can.
10. Tiéla ngái lítres zómí ya  
essence na líanza óyo. Put ten liters of gasoline in this can for me.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Nasílí kobongisela mobálí  
óyo lokolo ya móтука. I've already repaired the tire for the man.
2. Nasílí nabongiséli mobálí  
óyo lokolo ya móтука. I've just now finished repairing the tire for the man.
3. Náutí kobongisela mobálí  
óyo lokolo ya móтука. I've just this instant finished repairing the tire for the man.
4. Náutí kotíya litres mitánu  
ya essence na móтука. I've just this instant finished putting five liters of gasoline in the car.
5. Nasílí kotíya litres mitánu  
ya essence na móтука. I've already put five liters of gasoline in the car.
6. Nasílí natíi litres mitánu  
ya essence na móтука. I've just now put five liters of gasoline in the car.
7. Nasílí natálí mafúta na máí. I've just now looked at the oil and water.
8. Nasílí kotála mafúta na máí. I've already looked at the oil and the water.
9. Náutí kotála mafúta na máí. I've just this instant looked at the oil and the water.
10. Náutí kosukola móтука. I've just this instant finished washing the car.

## PATTERN DRILL 1

1. Ayébí kobongisa móтука. He knows how to repair cars.
2. Ayébí elóko akosála. He knows what to do.
3. Ayébí kotámbwisa móтука. He knows how to drive.

4. Ayébi likambo nini ezali. He knows what's the matter.
5. Ayébi epái bakoki kozwá ebendé ya móтука. He knows where to get parts for automobiles.
6. Ayébi mokolo nini akozóniga na Leo. He knows what day she returns to Leopoldville.
7. Ayébi mpó na nini batu batíki mosálá. He knows why the men stopped working.
8. Ayébi ntangu nini bakeí. He knows when they left.
9. Ayébi ndéngé nini bakoki kofungola mókó ya ndáko. He know how to unlock the door.
10. Ayébi na ngonga bóni bakoki kosilisa mosálá. He knows how fast it can be done.
11. Ayébi likambo ntina. He comprehends the problem.

#### 8.8 Non-aplicative Verbs With Two Objects.

Pésá yé nsósó óyo etíkálí.

Certain verbs, such as /-pésá/, 'to give', take two objects even though the verb doesn't have the applicative extension, e.g., /Pésá yé nsósó óyo etíkálí/, 'Give him the rest of the chicken'.

#### 8.9 Functionally-specialized Use of Imperative.

Nabandi mosálá úta ngonga ya mókó.

Certain verbs indicating stopping, starting, origin, or destination, are used in the imperative to mark the beginning or end of an interval of time or space, e.g., the sentence above, 'I have been working since one o'clock', literally, 'I started working beginning one o'clock'.

## Unit 9

## Basic Sentences

**-A-**

1. Olingí mosálá? Are you looking for work?

**-B-**

2. Nalingí. I am.

**-A-**

3. Qyébi mosálá nini? What do you know how to do?

**-B-**

-ngoma to iron, press

4. Kolámba, kobongisa ndáko, Cooking, house work, washing,  
kosukola bílambá, mpé and ironing.  
kongoma.

**-A-**

5. Malámu, mosálá na yó Fine, your job (will be) the  
kosukola bílambá. laundry.

6. Nakopésa yó na sánzá I will give you one thousand  
nkóto mókó. Olingí? francs per month. Is that  
satisfactory?

**-B-**

7. Elekí moké, bakísá lisúsu That's too little, add three  
nkámá mísatú. hundred francs more.

8. Sókó osálí malámu, bóongó If you do good work, I'll  
nakobákisa. increase you.

9. Olingí kobanda mosálá lóbí? Do you want to start to work  
tomorrow?

## -B-

10. *Té, kásí nalingí kobanda mosálá lóbí ekoyáa.* No, but I want to start the day after tomorrow.

## -A-

*tíí, téé, tí* until; a long time; far

11. *Malámu, mosálá na yó ekozala útá ngonga ya nsambo ya ntóngó, téé na ngonga ya mitánu ya mpókwa.* Good, your working hours will be from 7:00 A.M. to 5:00 P.M.

12. *Kokómaka nsíma ya ntángu téé.* Don't get in the habit of being late.

## -B-

13. *Té, nakoyáa na ntángu malámu.* No, I won't. I'll be on time.

## USEFUL PHRASES

*Limbísá ngái.* Excuse me. Pardon me.

*Lekísá ngái.* Let me pass. Let me by.

*Látá bilambá mpémbe.* Put on clean clothes.

*Longólá bilambá mbíndu na nzótú.* Take off your dirty clothes.

*Longwá!* Scram! Get lost!

*Tanda mbétu.* Make the bed.

*Tanda mésa.* Set the table.

*Sukólá basání.* Wash the dishes.

*Sukólá tásí na sání ya tásí.* Wash the cup and saucer.

*Sukólá kópo na lútú.* Wash the glass and spoon.

Sukólá mbéli, kánya, na nkelé.	Wash the knives, forks, and spoons.
Kitisélá ngái sandúku na nsé.	Send my suitcase down.
Mémélé ngái sandúku na nsé.	Bring my suitcase down.
Mémélé ngái sandúku na likoló.	Bring my suitcase up.
Butisélá ngái sandúku na likoló.	Send my suitcase up.
Butisélá ngái sumé na sabóni.	Send me up some towels and soap.
Komela likáyá té.	No smoking.
Kokóta té.	Do not enter.
-límvisa	to forgive, pardon, excuse
-láta	to dress, put on clothes
nzótú, nzótó, n-	body
-tanda	to spread, stretch out
mésa	table
mbétu, mbéto, m-	bed, pallet
sáni, ba-	dish, bowl, plate, basin
tásí (tasse)	cup
kópo	glass, tumbler, cup
lútú	spoon
mbéli	knife
kanya, nkanya, (n-)	fork
lokelé, n-	spoon
-kítá	to go/come down, descend; decrease, diminish
sandúku, (ba-)	box, chest, trunk, suitcase,
nsé, n-	earth, world; bottom; down, under, beneath

-meme	to carry, transport
-buta	to rise, ascend, climb (up), creep (up), go up, increase
sumé (essuie-main)	towel, wash cloth
sabóni (savon)	soap
likáyá, ma-	tobacco, cigarette, cigar

## NOTES

## 9.1 Comparison of Intensity

The 'comparison' of intensity, i.e., 'to be very', 'to be too', is expressed by the verb /-leka/, e.g., /Eleki moke/, 'It is too little', 'It's very small', literally 'It surpasses smallness'. See also Note 15.3.

## 9.2 Definite Condition

Sókó osálí malámu, nakobákisa.

If a proposition is true or affirmed to be true, the if-clause has the immediate past and the result clause the future, e.g., /Sókó osálí malámu, nakobákisa/, 'If you do good work, (then it is certain that) I'll raise your pay'.

## 9.3 General Prohibitions

Kokómaka nsíma ya ntángu té.  
Komela likáyá té.

The combination of an infinitive plus /té/ is used for general prohibitions, e.g., /Komela likáyá té/, 'No smoking'.

## 9.4 Special Meanings of Derived Stems

okoki kotékisa yangó

Derived stems often have a specialized meaning that cannot be guessed and therefore must be learned as a vocabulary item, e.g., /kotékisa/, 'to resell at a profit', as in /Sóki obongísí ndáko óyo, okoki kotékisa yangó/, 'If you have this house repaired, you can resell it at a profit'.

## 9.5 /téé/ Followed by /na/

téé na ngonga ya mítánu ya mpókwa

When preceding a temporal phrase, /téé/ is followed by /na/, as in the phrase above, 'until 5:00 P.M.'

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Osukóláki lisúsu bilambá? Have you washed the clothes yet?
2. Nasílí nasukóláki bilambá. I have just finished washing the clothes.
3. Nasílí kobongisa ndáko. I've already straightened up the house.
4. Lobelá ye ábongisa ndáko. Tell him to straighten up the the house.
5. Lobelá ye ángoma bilambá síka óyo. Tell him to press the clothes right away.
6. Lobá na ye sókó alingí kongoma bilambá síka óyo. Ask him if he can press the clothes right away.
7. Lobá na ye sókó alingí koyáa lelo na mpókwa. Ask him if he can come this afternoon.

8. Oyébi sókó akoyáa lelo  
na mpókwa? Do you know if he can come this afternoon?
9. Oyébi sókó azali lisúsu na ndako na ye? Do you know if he is home yet?
10. Ayébi té, sókó azali lisúsu na ndako na ye. He doesn't know if he is still home.

## PATTERN DRILL 1

1. Sókó oyéí lelo, nakopésa yo nkámá mókó. If you come today, I'll give you one hundred francs.
2. Sókí osómbí mókó, nakopésa yo nkámá mókó. If you buy one, I'll give you one hundred francs.
3. Sókí osómbí mókó, bakobongisa mosusu. If you buy one, I'll have the other repaired.
4. Sókí obongísí ndáko óyo, bakobongisa mosusu. If you have this house repaired, they will repair the other one.
5. Sókí obongísí ndáko óyo, okoki kotékisa yangó. If you have this house repaired, you can resell it at a profit.
6. Sókó ozili sánzá mókó, okoki kotékisa yangó. If you wait a month, you can sell them at a profit.
7. Sókí ozili sánzá mókó, okokende na Leo. If you wait a month, you can go to Leopoldville.
8. Sókí ozali na nkoto mókó, okokende na Leo. If you have a thousand francs, you can go to Leopoldville.
9. Sókí ozali na nkoto mókó, okoki kosomba bílamba. If you have a thousand francs, you can buy some clothes.
10. Sókó okeí na Leo, okoki kosomba bílamba. If you go to Leopoldville, you can buy some clothes.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Mosálá na bíṣú esílaka na ngonga ya mítánú ya mpókwa. We get off from work at 5:00 P.M.
2. Mosálá na bíṣú esílí na ntángu malámú. We finished our work early.
3. Tokómí na ndáko na ntángu malámú. We arrived home early.
4. Tokómí na ndáko libosó mbúla ébanda konóko. We arrived home before it started to rain.
5. Tosílisákí kosóm̄ba bilókó libosó mbúla ébanda konóko. We finished shopping before it started to rain
6. Tosílisákí kosóm̄ba bilókó mpé tokeí na ndáko. We finished shopping and went home.
7. Mosálá ekokákí na bíṣú nyónso té ntina na yangó tokeí na ndáko. There weren't enough jobs for all of us, and therefore we went home.
8. Mosálá elekákí makásí ntina na yangó tokeí na ndáko. The work was too hard, and because of that we came home.
9. Mosálá elekákí makásí ntángu ya koméla líkáyá ezalákí té. The work is so hard that there isn't (even) time to smoke.
10. Mosálá elekákí makásí ntángu ya kolia ezalákí té. There's so much work that there isn't (even) time to eat.

1

## GRAMMATICAL DRILLS 3

1. Bói akangólélí ngái ndáko. The houseboy opened the door for me.
2. Bói asukólélí ngái bilamba. The houseboy washed my clothes.
3. Nasukólélísí bói bilamba. I had the boy wash my clothes.
4. Nasukólélísí bói bilamba ya mbétu. I had the boy wash the sheets.
5. Angomíséli bói bilamba ya mbétu. She had the boy iron the sheets.
6. Angomíséli yé elambá ya mésa. She had him iron the tablecloth.
7. Alongolákí elambá ya mésa. She put away the table cloth.
8. Alongólákí basání ya sika. She put away the new dishes.
9. Azóngisákí basání ya sika. She put back the new dishes.
10. Akamatákí basání ya sika. She got out the new dishes.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Longólisa bána bilambá mbíndu na nzótú. Have the children take off their dirty clothes.
2. Longólisa bána bilambá mpémbe na nzótú. Have the children take off their clean clothes.
3. Látísá bána bilambá mpémbe. Have the children put on their clean clothes.
4. Látísá mama mpete na ye. Have mother wear her ring.
5. Memélé mama mpete na ye. Bring mother her ring.
6. Memélé ngái sanduku na likolo. Bring my suitcase up.

7. Butísélá ngái sandúku na likoló. Have my suitcase brought up.
8. Butísélá ngái sumé na sabóni. Send me some towels and soap.
9. Memelé ngái sumé na sabóni. Bring me some towels and soap.
10. Kitísélá ngái sumé na sabóni na nse. Send me down some towels and soap.

## PATTERN DRILL 2

1. Nautí (na) mosálá. I'm just returning from work.  
I'm on my home from work.  
I've just returned from work.
2. Nautí kosálá. I've just returned from work.
3. Nautí (na) Kinsásá. I've just come from Leopoldville.  
I'm on my way from Leopoldville.
4. Nakomi (na) Kinsásá. I've arrived from Leopoldville.  
I've come from Leopoldville.
5. Nakei (na) Kinsásá. I'm leaving for Leopoldville.  
I'm on the way to Leopoldville.  
I'm going to Leopoldville.

## PATTERN DRILL 3

1. Nalingí bolongola mafúta ya libosó bótíya ya síka. I want the oil changed.
2. Nalingí kotámbolisa mwána na ngái ya mobáli. I want to take my son for a walk.

3. Nalingí kokendé kotambola I want to go for a drive.  
na mótsuka.
4. Nalingí kotámbwisa mótuka I want to drive my daughter's  
ya mwána na ngái ya mwásí. car.
5. Nalingí motu mókó ásukola I want someone to wash my car.  
mótuka.

#### 9.6 /libosó/ Plus Subjunctive

Tokómí na ndáko libosó mbúla ébanda konóko.

When nouns such as /libosó/, 'front', are used to introduce temporal clauses, the verb of the temporal clause is in the subjunctive, as in the sentence above, 'We arrived home before it started rain'.

## Unit 10

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Aló! (allô) Hello.

-B-

2. Aló, náni wáná? Hello, who's speaking?

-A-

3. Ngai, Bonifásı. This is Boniface.

-B-

4. Díi, Bonifásı, olingi niní? Hi, Boniface, what do you want?

-A-

-tinda to send, order, command

5. Nalingí ótindela ngái búuku na yó ya Lingála. I'd like you to send me your Lingala book.

-B-

6. Boongó ya yó, otíki wápi? Where did you leave yours?

-A-

-bósana to forget; be mistaken,  
make a mistake

kelásı (classe) class, classroom, school

7. Nabósáni yangó na kelásı. I forgot and left it in the classroom.

-B-

8. Bóni, nakotindela yó  
yangó na mwána. Boní, I'll send it to you by  
my little brother.

-A-

9. Melesí. Thanks.

-B-

10. Likambo té. Don't mention it.

-A-

11. Eé, kokanga nainu té! Hey, don't hang up yet!

12. Okende wápi lelo na  
mpókwa? Where are you planning on going  
this evening?

-B-

-kana to resolve, intend,  
promise, threaten

-kanisa to think, reflect,

sinemá (cinéma) movies

13. Nakanísí (te) nakokende  
na sinemá lelo na mpókwa. I think I'll go to the movies  
this evening.

-A-

14. Olingí tókende bísu  
mibale? Would you like for me to go  
with you?

-B-

-bíma to go out, come out, go  
for a walk, emerge

15. Eé, nalingí, nakobíma na  
ngonga ya mwambi. Yes, of course, I'm leaving  
at eight o'clock.

## -A-

16. Na ntángu mosúsu. See you then.  
 17. Malámu. Fine.

## USEFUL PHRASES

Yóká (na) télén.	Answer the phone.
Kangá télén.	Hang up the phone.
Zóngísá (na) télén.	Hang up the phone.
Béngá yé na télén.	Call him up.
Baákobéngá yó na télén.	You're wanted on the phone.
Bétélé yé singa.	Call him up.
Télén ezali kobéte.	The telephone is ringing.
Mondélé abéti ngonga.	The European rang the bell.
Mondélé azali kobéte masíni.	The European is typing.
Mondélé azali kobéte mabóko.	The European is clapping his hands.
Mondélé azali kobéte mái.	The European is swimming.
Mondélé azali kobéte bondíki.	The European is shooting a gun.
Nkómbo na yó nání?	What's your name?
Nkómbo na ngái Ngói.	My name is Ngói.
Bapésí yé Monokomolai.	They nicknamed him Big Mouth.
télén (téléphone)	telephone
-béngá	to call, summon; call, name; order (merchandise)
-béte, -béta	to hit, strike, knock, beat
singa	cord, rope, wire, cable, band, belt

mondélé, mi-	white man, European
masini (machine)	machine, mechanical
	instrument, train
bondóki, ma-	gun, rifle
nkómbó, n-	name, honor, reputation
molai, mi-	long, large, deep, high

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Natíndí mwána mpó na búuku. I sent the boy for the book.
2. Natíndí búuku na mwána. I sent the book to the boy.
3. Nakotindela yo' búuku na mwána. I'll send the book to you by the boy.
4. Nakotindela yo' búuku lóbí na ntóngó. I'll send the book to you in the morning.
5. Natindéláki yo' búuku lóbí na ntóngó. I sent the book to you yesterday morning.
6. Natindéláki yo' matungúlu lóbí. I sent you the onions yesterday.
7. Natindáki yo' ósómbela ngái matungúlu lóbí. I sent you to buy me some onions yesterday.
8. Natindáki yo' ósómbela ngái linzanza ya nyama. I sent you to buy a can of meat for me yesterday.
9. Akosómbela ye' linzanza ya nyama. He will buy a can of meat for her.
10. Akosómbela ye' ndáko. He will buy the house for her.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nabósáni ndáko na ye. I've forgotten where his house is located.
2. Nabósáni, ye náni. I've forgotten who he is.
3. Nabósáni ntángu níní tokómí? I forgot what time it is.
4. Nabósáni nkómbó na ye. I've forgotten his name.
5. Nabósáni bána na ye. I forgot about his children.
6. Nabósáni ndinga alobaka. I've forgotten what language he speaks.
7. Nabósáni mosálá na ye. I've forgotten what he does (for a living).
8. Nabósáni nókó na ye. I've forgotten who his uncle is.
9. Nabósáni epái nátíki búuku. I've forgotten where I left my book.
10. Nabósáni epái ekeí. I've forgotten where he went.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nakobima na ngonga ya motóbá. I'm going out at six o'clock.
2. Mwásí na ngái akokómá na ngonga ya motóbá. My wife will arrive at six o'clock.
3. Mwásí na ngái akokómá na Leó leló na mpókwa. My wife will arrive in Leopoldville this evening.
4. Bakotika Leó leló na mpókwa. We will leave Leopoldville this evening. (impersonal we)
5. Bakotika Brazzaville na ngonga ya mókó na ntóngó. We will leave Brazzaville at 11:00 A.M. (impersonal we)

6. Bána na ngái bazalákí na  
Brazzaville na ngonga  
ya mókó na ntóngó.
7. Bána na ngái bazalákí  
kokendé ntángó nakómákí.
8. Bakangákí ndáko ntángó  
nakómákí.
9. Bakangákí ndáko m pé motu  
azalákí té.
10. Natúní kásí motu azalákí té.
- My children were at Brazzaville  
at 1:00 A.M.
- My children were leaving when  
I arrived.
- The house was locked up when  
I arrived.
- The house was locked and no  
one was there.
- I called out, but no one was  
there.

## PATTERN DRILL 1

1. Sókó oyákí leló, mbele  
napésákí yó nkámá mokó.
2. Sókí osómbákí mókó, mbele  
napésákí yó nkámá mokó.
3. Sókí osómbákí mókó, mbele  
babongísákí mosusu.
4. Sókí obongísákí ndáko óyo,  
mbele babongísákí mosusu.
5. Sókí obongísákí ndáko óyo,  
mbele okokákí kotékisa  
yango.
6. Sókó ozilákí sánzá mókó,  
mbele okokákí kotékisa  
yango.
- If you had come today, I would  
have given you a thousand  
francs.
- If you had bought one, I would  
have given you a thousand  
francs.
- If you had bought one, they  
would have had the other  
repaired.
- If you had had this house  
repaired, they would have  
repaired the other one.
- If you had had this house  
repaired, you could have  
sold it at a profit.
- If you had waited a month,  
you would have been able  
to sell it at a profit.

7. Sókó oziláki sánzá mókó,  
mbéle okendéki na Kinsásá. If you had waited a month, you could have gone to Leopoldville.
8. Sókí ozaláki na nkótó mókó,  
mbéle okendéki na Kinsásá. If you had had a thousand francs, you could have gone to Leopoldville.
9. Sókí ozaláki na nkótó mókó,  
mbéle okokákí kosómaba  
bilambá. If you had had a thousand francs, you could have bought some clothes.
10. Sókó okendéki na Kinsásá  
mbéle okokákí kosómaba  
bilambá. If you had gone to Leopoldville, you could have bought some clothes.

## PATTERN DRILL 2

1. Moto mókó ayáki kolúka  
yó na midi. Someone came looking for you at lunchtime.
2. Moto mókó asolóláki na yé  
lóbí na telefón. Someone talked to him on the phone yesterday.
3. Moto mókó aákobíma na  
ngonga ya motóbá. Someone is going out at six o'clock.
4. Moto mókó atíndéláki yó  
bondóki. Someone sent you a rifle.
5. Moto mókó abósáni búuku  
na yé ya Lingála. Someone has forgotten his Lingala book.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Luká numeró na bangó ya telefon. Look up their phone number.
2. Lukélá ngái numeró na bangó ya telefon. Look up their phone number for me.

3. Lukélísá yé numero ya  
bangó ya telefón. Have her look up their phone number.
4. Lukélísá yé numero ya bangó ya telefón mpó na ngái. Have her look up their phone number for me.
5. Lukélísá yé búuku ya telefón mpó na ngái. Have her look for the phonebook for me.

## PATTERN DRILL 3

1. Ndéngé na yé ya kolia  
ezali malámu. He has good table manners.
2. Ndéngé na yé ya koláta  
bilambá ezali malámu. He always looks nicely dressed.
3. Ndéngé na yé ya koloba  
ezali malámu. His manner of speaking is polite and easy to understand.
4. Ndéngé na yé ya kosála  
ezali malámu. He always does a good job.
5. Ndéngé na yé ya kotámbola  
ezali malámu. He walks well.

## PATTERN DRILL 4

1. Nakanísí akoyáa. I think he's coming.
2. Nakanísí akoyaa té. I think he's not coming.
3. Nakanísí té akoyáa. I don't think he's coming.
4. Nakanísí te akoyáa. I think that he's coming.
5. Nakanísí té te akoyáa. I don't think that he's coming.

## 10.1 Hypothetical Supposition.

Sókó oyáki lélé, mbele napésáki yó nkámá mókó.

Hypothetical supposition or contrary-to-fact condition is expressed by the recent past in both clauses and by the particle /mbele/ at the beginning of the main clause, e.g., /Sókó oyáki lélé, mbele napésáki yó nkámá mókó/, 'If you had come today, I would have given you a thousand francs.'

In the various Lingala dialects, a number of other particles are used in the same way as described above for /mbele/, e.g., /tíki/, /tiké/, /ka/, /kana/, /énte/, /ndé/, /mbé/.

## 10.2 'Passive' Plural

Bakotíka Leó lélé na mpókwa.

The third person plural besides expressing what is commonly done (Note 5.9) also is used like impersonal or editorial we in English, e.g., /Bakotíka Leó lélé na mpókwa/, literally and often, 'They will leave Leopoldville this evening', but it is also often used much like English, 'We, i.e., that group of passengers, or my plane, etc., will leave Leopoldville this evening.'

## 10.3 Future in Non-initial and Subordinate Clauses.

Nakanísí akoyáa.

Verbs in non-initial and subordinate clauses, which refer to a future time, are in the future tense, e.g., /Nakanísí akoyáa/, 'I think he's coming', literally, 'I think he will come'. Speakers of English often make the error of using a present tense in such clauses in Lingala.

## Unit 11

## Basic Sentences

- A -

**-bele** to hurt, suffer, be sick

1. Ōokobéle wápi? Where do you hurt?

-B-

**-lala** to sleep, lie down;  
stay, remain

mónganga, mí- physician, European  
doctor

2. Na butú naláli té, mónganga. I didn't sleep all night,  
doctor.

**mutú, motú, motó, mi-** head; bunch

**libumu, ma-** stomach, belly, womb

**mobimba, mi-** entire, whole

3. Mutú, libumu, nzótumobimba mpásí. My head, stomach, and whole body hurts.

-A-

moto fire, hot

4. Oókoyóka nzótumoto? Do you have a fever?

- B -

wápi by no means, no, nothing

5. Náyéba wápi, mónganga. How could I know, doctor?

6. Nazali na thermomètre té  
na ndáko. I don't have a thermometer at  
home.

## -A-

simisi (chemise) shirt

7. Longolá naino simisi na yó. Take off your shirt first.
8. Tiya thermomètre óyo na Put this thermometer in your  
monoko. mouth.

## -B-

9. Melesi, mónganga. O.K., doctor.

## -A-

fiefélé, fiévéle,  
(fièvre) fever

10. Óo, ozali na fiefélé, Paul. Oh, you have a fever, Paul.

## -B-

-sálisa to help, take care of,  
employ, instruct

kó indeed, come on! go  
ahead!

11. Sálisá ngái kó mónganga. Help me, doctor.

## -A-

12. Eloko nini oliáki tooó What did you eat or drink  
omeláki lóbí? yesterday?

## -B-

kaka only, alone

tíi tea

límpa, ma- bread, piece of bread

13. Káka tíi na mámpa. Only some tea and bread.

14. Fiéfélé yangó ezali makásí? Is my fever very high?  
 (The fever, (it is very high?)

-A-

- |  |                  |   |
|--|------------------|---|
| 15. Te, mpenzá té.   | mpenzá           | really, truly, only,<br>completely, alone                                     |
|  | kínini (quinine) | quinine   |
| 16. Kamáta kínini óyo, mela<br>mibalé sika óyo, mibalé<br>mosúsu libosó ya kolála. |                  | Take two of these quinine<br>pills right away and two<br>before going to bed. |

-B-

- |                                       |                 |  |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|--|
| 17. Melesi, mónganga.                 | Thanks, doctor. |  |
| <br>                                  |                 |  |
| 18. Sóki lóbí obíki té,<br>zóngá áwa. | -bíka           | to recover, live,<br>be recued                       |
|                                       |                 | If you have not recovered by<br>tomorrow, come back. |

#### USEFUL PHRASES

- |                               |                     |
|-------------------------------|---------------------|
| Leló mokolo nini?             | What day is it?     |
| Leló mokolo ya lomingo.       | Today is Sunday.    |
| Leló mokolo ya eyenga.        | Today is Sunday.    |
| Leló mokolo ya mosálá mókó.   | Today is Monday.    |
| Leló mokolo ya mosálá mibalé. | Today is Tuesday.   |
| Leló mokolo ya mosálá misátu. | Today is Wednesday. |
| Leló mokolo la mosálá mínei.  | Today is Thursday.  |

Leló mokolo ya mosálá mitánu.	Today is Friday.
Leló mokolo ya mpósó.	Today is Saturday.
Mpósó eleki nazalákí na Brazzaville.	I spent last weekend at Brazzaville.
Na nsúka ya mpósó óyo nakokénde mobémbo na Mpótó.	This weekend I am going on a trip to Europe.
Naákolengèle mobémbo na ntángó ya elanga.	I'm getting ready for a trip during the dry season.
Abéli.	He's sick. He's gotten sick.
Azali na maláli.	He's sick.
Nazoki na mokongo.	I've injured my back.
Nazoki na línu.	I've injured a tooth.
Nazoki na mosai.	I've injured my finger.
Azali kosono bílamba.	She's making clothes.
Azali kosono mopíla.	She's making an undershirt.
Azali kosono patalo.	She's making some trousers.
Azali kosono kalesó.	She's making some shorts.
Azali komeka kazáka.	He's trying on a coat.
Azali komeka ekotí.	He's trying on a hat.
Azali komeka soseti.	He's trying on some socks.
Azali komeka sapato.	He's trying on shoes.
lomingo	Sunday
eyenga	festival, feast day; Sunday, weekend
nsúka, n-	end, termination
-bémbo	to travel
mobémbo	trip, journey

Mpótó, Mpútú (Portugal)	Europe
-lengèle	to prepare, get ready
elanga	field, garden; dry season, year
maláli, maládi (maladie)	illness, sickness
-zoka	to be injured, be touched
mosai, mi-	finger, toe
-sono	to sew, make clothes
mompila, mi-	undershirt, teeshirt, vest, sweater
pataló (pantalon)	shorts, underwear
-meká	to measure, weigh, try (out), test
kazáka	coat, jacket, vest
ekötí, bi-	(man's) hat
soséti (chaussette)	sock, stocking
sapáto, sapáta	shoe(s)

## NOTES

11.1 Emphatic /wápi/

Náyéba wápi?

/wápi/, 'where', plus the subjunctive expresses emphatic denial of the ability and/or opportunity to do something, e.g., /náyéba wápi?, 'How could I know (if)...?', 'I don't knew whether or not...', 'I don't know anything at all about...'.

11.2 Spelling of /oo/

/oo/ is //oh//.

Lexical Drill 1

1. Naákoyóka mutú mpásı. I have a headache.
2. Naákoyóka libumu mpásı. I have a stomach ache.
3. Naákoyóka mokongo mpásı I have a backache.
4. Naákoyóka loboko mpásı. I have a pain in my hand.
5. Naákoyóka linu mpásı. I have a toothache.

Lexical Drill 2

1. Naákobele na mutú. I have a headache.
2. Naákobele na libumu. I have a stomach ache.
3. Naákobele na mokongo. I have a backache.
4. Naákobele na loboko. I have a pain in my hand.
5. Naákobele na linu. I have a toothache.

Lexical Drill 3

1. Nasálaka na butú. I work at night.
2. Nasálaka na mói. I work during the day.
3. Nasálaka na ntóngó. I work in the morning.
4. Nasálaka na mpókwa. I work in the afternoon.
5. Nasálaka na ntángu ya mbúla. I work during the rainy season.
6. Nasálaka na ntángu ya elanga. I work during the dry season.

## Lexical Drill 4

1. Longólá simisi. Take off your shirt.
2. Longólá sapáto. Take off your shoes.
3. Longólá pataló. Take off your trousers.
4. Longólá kazáka. Take off your coat.
5. Longólá kazáka ya mbúla. Take off your raincoat.

## Lexical Drill 5

1. Zongísá soséti. Put on your socks.
2. Zongísá kalesó. Put on your shorts.
3. Zongísá ekotí. Put on your hat.
4. Zongísá pull-over. Put on your sweater.
5. Zongísá cravate. Put on your tie.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Pésá ngái nsósó mobimba. Give me a whole chicken.
2. Ókolámba lelo na midi  
nsósó mobimba. Today for lunch fix a whole chicken.
3. Ókolámba nsósó mobimba  
lelo na midi. Fix a whole chicken for lunch today.
4. Ókolámba tíi mpó na mónganga. Fix some tea for the doctor.
5. Kendé kosómaba tíi mpó na  
mónganga. Go buy some tea for the doctor.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ayákí ntango nazalákí kolála. He arrived while I was asleep.
2. Ayákí ntango nazalákí kolia. He came while I was eating.

3. Alongóláki bílambá na yé ntango nazaláki kolia. He undressed while I was eating.
4. Alongóláki bílambá na yé ntango azaláki libosó ya mónganga. He undressed when he was in with the doctor.
5. Azaláki na mpásí ntango azaláki libosó ya mónganga. He was suffering when he was in with the doctor.
6. Azaláki na mpásí ntango akendéki epái ya mónganga. He was sick when he went to the doctor's.
7. Azaláki na fiéfélé ntango akendéki epái ya mónganga. He had a fever when he went to the doctor's.
8. Azaláki na fiéfélé ntango namónaki yé. He had a fever when I saw him.
9. Namónaki yé ntango azaláki kosálisa tata na yé. I saw him while he was taking care of his father.
10. Natindéláki yé mámpa ntango azaláki kosálisa tata na yé. I sent him some bread during the time he was caring for his father.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Sókó simísí na ngái eyáki mbindu té, kana tokei Kisangani bísu mibale. If my shirt hadn't got dirty, then the two of us would go to Stanleyville.
2. Sókó simísí na ngái eyáki mbindu té, kana nakei kotála mónganga. If my shirt hadn't got dirty, I would go see the doctor.
3. Sókó nazaláki na maláli kana nakei kotála mónganga. If I were sick, I would go see the doctor.
4. Sókó nazaláki na maláli kana nakendéki kotála mónganga. If I had been sick, I would have gone to see the doctor.

5. Sókó nabíkáki té, kana  
nakendéki kotala mónganga. If I hadn't got better, I would have gone to the doctor.
6. Sókó nabíkáki té, mbe nakeí  
kotala mónganga. If I hadn't got better, I would go to see the doctor.
7. Sókó nazaláki na fiévélé,  
mbe nakeí kotala mónganga. If I had a fever, I would go see the doctor.
8. Sókó nazaláki na fiévélé,  
mbe naláli. If I had a fever, I'd go to bed.
9. Sókó nabélékí, mbe naláli. If I were sick, I'd go to bed.
10. Sókó nabélékí, mbe nameli  
tíi ya móto. If I were sick, I'd drink some hot tea.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Tíndá motu mókó ábéngela  
ngái mónganga. Send someone to get me a doctor.
2. Lobélá ye ákende kotala  
mónganga. Tell him to go see the doctor.
3. Lobélá ye ábéngela ngái  
bangó na telefon. Tell her to get them on the phone for me.
4. Natúnáki ye ábéngela ngái  
bangó na telefon. I asked her to get them on the phone for me.
5. Natúnáki ye álongola simisi  
na ye. I asked him to take off his shirt.
6. Balingí álongola simisi  
na ye. They wanted him to take off his shirt.
7. Balingí koyéba elokö níni  
naleí too nameli lelo. They wanted to know what I had eaten and drunk today.
8. Mónganga alingí koyéba elokö  
nini naleyí too nameli lelo. The doctor wanted to know what I had eaten or drunk today.

9. Mónganga alingí átiya      The doctor wanted me to put the  
         thermomètre óyo na      thermometer in my mouth.  
         monoko.
10. Ntina nini bolingí átiya     Why do you want me to put the  
         thermomètre óyo na      thermometer in my mouth?  
         monoko?

## Unit 12

## Basic Sentences

## -A-

-konza	to rule, manage
mokonzi, ba-	chief, king, boss, supervisor
wa	of, belonging to, at, from

1. Alobé, óyo azali mokonzi      Albert, this is our chief.  
     wa bísu.

## -B-

2. Mbóté, Mokonzi.      Good morning, Chief.

## -C-

3. Mbóté.      Good morning.

## -B-

-fwánda, -fánda	to sit, be seated; live, reside
-----------------	------------------------------------

4. Fwándá sókó olingí.      Sit down, please.

## -C-

5. Melesi.      Thanks.

## -B-

nsango, n-	news, report
mbóka, m-	village, region, district; tribe, race; residence, address

kólongónu health

6. Mokonzi, nsango bóni na mbóka? Chief, what's new at home?

7. Bangó bánsó bazalí nzótú kólongónu? Is everybody well?

-C-

mpóngi, m- sleep

mongungi, monkungi, n- mosquito

mayéle understanding, intelligence, intellect, mind, slyness, craftiness, manner, means

ndé only, however, although

8. Nsango té, káká ndé na butú tozwí mpóngi té. Nothing new, however, we haven't gotten any sleep lately.

9. Ngungi áwa mayéle té. There are more mosquitoes than you can imagine.

-B-

-keba to pay attention, be attentive

-swaa to bite, sting

10. Kebá na bangungi baswáa bána té, mpó bakoki kozwá fiéfélé makásí. Be careful that the mosquitoes don't bite the children because they would get a bad fever.

11. Éé, nayébi. Ntina na yangó nayéi. Yes, I know. That's why I've come.

## -B-

- nkisi, n- medicine, charm
12. Olingí napésa yó pompi Do you want me to give you any  
na nkisi ya ngungi? sprays with DDT?
- talasé (terrasse) ditch, canal
- mpembéní side, edge; around,  
near
13. Ozali na mái té na talasé Don't you have water in the  
na mpembéní ya ndako? ditches around the house?

## -C-

- pítoló (pétrole) kerosene
- sopa to pour (out), spill;  
talk nonsense
14. Eé, mái ezali, kási tozali Yes there is, but we have enough  
na pítoló mpó na kosopa kerosene to pour on (the  
likoló. ditches).

## -B-

- 'voiture' automobile
- kúná over there, yonder
15. Voiture na yó ezali kúná? Is your car out there?
16. Nakoki kotíisa pompi na Can I put the sprays in your  
voiture? car?

## -C-

17. Eé, melesi. Yes, thanks.

## -B-

- masanga wine, beer
18. Mokonzi, omelaka masanga Sir, what do you usually drink?  
níni?

## -C-

mbila, m- palm nuts, palm tree

19. Namelaka masanga ya mbila. I usually drink palm wine.

## -B-

20. Andéle! Kenda kozwá  
masanga. André! Go get some drinks.

## USEFUL PHRASES

Nazali na nzala.	I'm hungry.
Nazali na mpósá ya mái.	I'm thirsty.
Nalembí.	I'm tired.
Nalembí na kokéngèle bána.	I'm tired of looking after children.
Naákoyóka mpongí.	I'm sleepy.
Naákoyóka molunge.	I'm hot.
Naákoyóka malíli.	I'm cold.
Abekí mosolo na yo.	He borrowed the money from you.
Adéfi mbóngó na yo.	He borrowed the money from you.
Abekísí yo mbóngó.	He loaned the money to you.
Adéfísí yo mosolo.	He loaned the money to you.
Ayíbi mbóngó na yo.	He stole the money from you.
Kangá moyíbi!	Stop the thief!
Landa moyíbi!	Follow the thief!
Ozali na falánga ya mbuma ya nkoto mókó?	Do you have change for a thousand francs?
Kende kosangisa masanga.	Go mix some drinks.

nzala	hunger, famine
mpósá	urge, desire
-lémbe	to be(come) tired, weary; tender, done
-kéngé	to take glances at, watch
-kéngéle	to watch, guard
malíli	cold; shade, cool place
-beka, -défa	to borrow, buy on credit
-bekisa, -défisa	to lend, sell on credit, pay in advance
mósolo, mi-	money; wealth, dowry
mbóngó, m-	money
-yiba	to steal, take away
moyíbi, ba-	thief
-landa	to follow, pursue; prosecute; sue; woo, court
mbuma, m-	fruit; sore, boil; grain, seed; change
-sanga	to assemble, come together

## NOTES

## 12.1 Nouns From Derived Stems.

Nouns as well as verbs are formed from both simple and derived stems. This is extremely productive, i.e., very many words are formed in this manner. In the following lessons, the structure of the various classes is described; but beginning with

this lesson, many such new words are introduced in the exercises without build-up or explanation. Since the structure of such words and the roots and affixes have been previously explained, it is up to the student to recognize and analyze these new words with only the help of the English translation. The student must be able to do this if he is to control Lingala.

#### 12.2 Agent Nouns

The MO-BA prefix class and the /-i/ suffix mark agent nouns, e.g., /mokonzi/, 'ruler', 'manager', 'chief' from /-konza/ 'to rule', 'manage'.

#### 12.3 /wa/: /ya/

Óyo azali mokonzi wa bísu.

Various alternates of the particle /ya/ occur, e.g., /wa/, /ma/, /mwa/.

#### 12.4 Literary use of /ndé/ to Mark Future

In literary Lingala /ndé/, 'only', 'although', is sometimes used as a future marker, e.g., /ndé nakeí/, 'I will go'. Since this use of /ndé/ is restricted to certain special styles of written material, the student should continue to AVOID it ENTIRELY even if he becomes fluent in Lingala.

#### 12.5 Hyperbole with /...mayéle té/.

Ngungi áwa mayéle té.

To express overabundance of something /...mayéle té/ is used, e.g., /Ngungi áwa mayéle té/, 'There are more mosquitoes than you could imagine/count, than there is sand in the sea.'

#### 12.6 Nouns of Deed or Action, Type 2.

The BO-MA prefix class and the suffix /-i/ form a large number of nouns of deed or action, e.g., /boléi/, 'meal', /boyéi/,

'arrival', 'coming'. Since the plural of nearly all these words is quite rare, it is given in the vocabulary in parentheses, e.g., /bobandí, (ma-)/, 'beginning', 'introduction'.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Nalingí ópésa ngái falángá I need change for a thousand  
ya mbuma ya nkótó mókó. francs.
2. Nalingí ópésa ngái mbóngó I need the money I loaned you.  
nadefísákí yo.
3. Nazalí na besoin ya mbóngó I need the money I loaned you.  
nadefísákí yo.
4. Nazalí na besoin ya pítoló I need some kerosene for water.  
mpó na mái.
5. Ayéí kotúna pítoló mpó He has come to ask for kerosene  
na mái. for spreading on water.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nkísí ya ngungi ya binú ekoki. You have enough DDT.
2. Essence ya bisú ekoki. We have enough gasoline.
3. Mosolo ya bangó ekoki. They have enough money.
4. Bilamba ya ye bikoki. She has enough clothes.
5. Masanga ya yo makoki. You have enough beer.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Mokonzi alobéli ngái te<br>nákende kosóm̄ba nsósó.   | The chief told me to go buy a<br>chicken.                  |
| Bakonzi balobéli bísu te<br>tókende kosóm̄ba nsósó.     | The chiefs told us to go buy<br>some chickens.             |
| 2. Mosál̄i afwándí epái ya<br>ndáko.                    | The worker is sitting by the<br>house.                     |
| Basál̄i bafwándí epái ya<br>ndáko.                      | The workers are sitting by<br>the house(s).                |
| 3. Mosález̄i akolámbela yó<br>nyama.                    | The servant will prepare the<br>meat for you.              |
| Basález̄i bakolámbela bínu<br>nyama.                    | The servants will prepare the<br>meat for you.             |
| 4. Mwána óyo ya mobál̄i ayébí<br>nkómbó ya mosóm̄bi té. | This boy doesn't know the name<br>of the purchaser.        |
| Bána óyo ya mibál̄i bayébí<br>nkómbó ya basóm̄bi té.    | These boys don't know the<br>names of the purchasers.      |
| 5. Motéki aákofwándaka nsíma<br>ya bilókó na ye.        | The trader is sitting behind<br>his things.                |
| Batéki baákofwándaka nsíma<br>ya bilókó na bangó.       | The traders are sitting behind<br>their things.            |
| 6. Motál̄i alingí kotíkala té<br>mpó na mbúla.          | The spectator didn't want to<br>stay because of the rain.  |
| Batál̄i balingí kotíkala<br>té mpó na mbúla.            | The spectators didn't want to<br>stay because of the rain. |

7. Moyékolí azaláki na búuku moqué. The student had a small book.  
 Bayékolí bazaláki na búuku mique. The students had small books.
8. Molobelí atúní motu óyo motúna. The speaker asked the man a question.  
 Balobelí batúní batu óyo mitúna. The speakers asked the men questions.
9. Mosálisi apésákí mwásí nkisi. The assistant gave the woman the medicine.  
 Basálisi bapésákí basí nkisi. The assistants gave the women the medicine.
10. Tata na ngái azali na mosala té. My father doesn't have a job.  
 Batata na bísu bazali na misálá té. Our fathers don't have jobs.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Natindéli mokonzi mafúta na mwána. I sent the chief some oil by the boy.
2. Natindéli basáli nyama. I sent the workers some meat.
3. Natindi basáli nyama. I sent the workers for some meat.
4. Natindi voiture ékende kokamata mokonzi. I sent the car for the chief.
5. Atúní ngái voiture mpó ákende kokamata mokonzi. He asked me for a car to go get the chief.
6. Atúní ngái voiture mpó ákende na Kinsásá. He asked me for a car to go to Leopoldville.

7. Atúní ngái nátínda póm̄pi  
na Kinsásá. He asked me to send the spray guns to Leopoldville.
8. Atúní ngái nátínda póm̄pi  
na ndáko na yé na Kinsásá. He asked me to send the sprays to his house in Leopoldville.
9. Natikálí na ndáko na yé na Kinsásá. I'm staying at his house in Leopoldville.
10. Natikálí na mosálá. I'm staying at work. I have stayed at work.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

1. Moṣoni asómbí masíni ya kosono bilambá.  
Baṣoni basómbí masíni ya kosono bilambá. The tailor bought a sewing machine.  
The tailors bought sewing machines.
2. Motámbwísí ya mótsuka akokítisa mobótísí na lopítalo.  
Baṭámbwísí ya mituka bakokítisa babótísí na lopítalo. The chauffeur will take the midwife to the hospital.  
The chauffeurs will take the midwives to the hospital.
3. Molámbí ayébí ntángu ya bokómí ya mokonzi té.  
Balámbí bayébí ntángu ya bokómí ya bakonzi té. The cook doesn't know the time of the arrival of the chief.  
The cooks don't know the hour of arrival of the chiefs.
4. Momémí aákotiela ngái sandúku na mótsuka.  
Baṇémí baákotiela bíṣú basandúku na mituka. The porter is putting the trunk in the car for me.  
The porters are putting the trunks in the cars for us.

5. Moyémbi ayébisi mokonzi  
botíki ya koyémba.  
  
Bayémbi bayébisi bakonzi  
botíki ya koyémba.
- The singer submitted his resignation to the choral director.  
The singers submitted their resigantion(s) to the choral director.
6. Mobótí na ngái atúní ntángó  
ya bokéi ya nókó.  
  
Babótí na bísu batúní  
ntángó ya bokéi ya banókó.
- My parent asked the departure time of my uncle.  
Our parents asked the departure time of our uncles.
7. Moyékoli aákoyékola ndéngé  
ya bobótisi.  
  
Bayékoli baákoyékola ndéngé  
ya bobótisi.
- The student is studying obstetrics.  
The students are studying obstetrics.
8. Bomeki ya mótsuka na ngái  
ya síka ezaláki lóbí.  
  
Bomeki ya mituka na bísu  
ya síka ezaláki lóbí.
- I tried out my new car yesterday.  
We tried out our new cars yesterday.
9. Na nsíma ya boleí, molobelí  
azaláki kolobela batu mpó  
na bobandí ya kelásí.  
  
Na nsíma ya boleí, balobelí  
bazaláki kolobela batu mpó  
na bobandí ya kelásí.
- After the meal, the speaker talked to the people about the beginning of school.  
After the meal, the speakers talked to the people about the beginning of school.
10. Mobongísi ya mótsuka akangi  
mótsuka mpó na motu ya  
makolo.  
  
Babongísi ya mituka bakangi  
mituka mpó na batu ya  
makolo.
- The mechanic stopped the car because of a pedestrian.  
The mechanics stopped the cars because of the pedestrians.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Libosó na bolei, nameli likayaá moko. Before the meal, I smoked a cigarette.
2. Libosó na bolei, nasukoli nzotu. Before the meal, I took a bath.
3. Libosó ya bolei, nasukoli nzotu. Before leaving, I took a bath.
4. Libosó ya bolei, atii mopepe na motuka. Before leaving, he aired up the tires.
5. Nsimá ya bokangi mótsuka, atii mopepe. After stopping the car, he aired up the tire(s).
6. Nsimá ya bokangi mótsuka, abimi. After stopping the car, he got out.
7. Nsimá ya kotala bipái na bipái, abimi. After looking all around, he got out.
8. Nsimá ya kotala bipái na bipái, azóngi na mótsuka. After looking all around, he got back in the car.
9. Nsimá ya kosolola, azóngi na mótsuka. After talking a while, he got back in the car.
10. Nsimá ya kosolola, akoti na ndako lisusu. After talking a while, he went back in the house again.

Question and Answer Drill 1

1. Ndínga na yo ya mbóka nini? What is your native language?  
Ndínga na ngái ya mbóka ezali Lingala. My native language is Lingala.
2. Oyéi kosála nini? What did you come for?  
Nayéi kotuna yo bolimbisi. I've come to ask your forgiveness.

3. Ndéngé na yé ya bozali  
ezali bóní?  
Ndéngé na yé ya bozali  
ezali malámu.  
What kind of personality does  
he have?  
He has a nice personality.
4. Bolongoli mokonzi na mosálá  
na yé ezali makásí?  
~~Ee~~, bolongoli mokonzi na  
mosálá na yé ezali makásí.  
Is the removal of a chief  
difficult?  
Yes, the removal of a chief  
is difficult.
5. Botálí libosó ya líninísá  
ezali kitóko?  
Té, botálí libosó ya líninísá  
ezali kitóko té.  
Is the view from the window  
beautiful?  
No, the view from the window  
isn't beautiful.
6. Bakéngeli bazali wápi?  
Bakéngeli batelemí libosó  
ya ndáko monéne.  
Where are the guards?  
The guards are standing in  
front of the big building.
7. Náni azali kosangisa masanga?  
Mwána ya mosálá azali  
kosangisa masanga.  
Who is mixing the drinks?  
The house boy is fixing the  
drinks.
8. Olingí nápésa yó nini?  
Nalingí ópésa ngái nkisi  
ya ngungi.  
What do you need?  
I need some DDT.
9. Ozwi nsango ya mbóka?  
~~Ee, lelo~~ nazwi nsango ya  
mbóka.  
Have you had any news from  
home lately?  
Yes, today I received news  
from home.
10. Óyo kúná ndáko na yó?  
~~Ee, yangó~~ ndáko na ngái.  
Is that your house over there?  
Yes, that's my house.

## Unit 13

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Oókosála níni? What are you doing?

-B-

-koma	to write, copy, enroll, engrave, sign
moningá, ba-	friend, companion, peer, colleague
mokanda, mi-	letter, paper, document, sheet of paper
2. Naákokomela moningá na ngái mokanda.	I'm writing my friend a letter.
mosíka, (mi-)	distance, distant, removed, far off
-yókana	to hear (from) one another, understand each other, agree
3. Mikolo mikomi mosíka toókoyókana lisusu nsango té.	It's been a long time since we've heard from one another.

-A-

4. Óyo níni? What's this?

-B-

chec	check
magazini (magasin)	department store
5. Óo, nabósáni kotinda chec na magazini.	Oh, I forgot, to send a check to the department store.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| nyongo, n-  | debt  |
| 6. Batúni ngái sókó nakozila<br>nini mpó nakofúta nyongo<br>na bangó. | They asked me why I'm waiting<br>before I pay them. |
|   | -A-   |
| 7. Osómbáki níní?   | What did you buy?                                   |
|   | -B-   |
| esáleli, bı-  | tool, instrument                                    |
| taliyé, talyé (atelier)   | shop, workshop, workroom                            |
| 8. Mwáa bisáleli mókó mpó na<br>taliyé na ngái.                       | Just some tools for my workshop.                    |
|   | -A-   |
| esálelo, bı-  | shop, workshop, workroom,<br>place to/for work      |
| 9. Osálaka níní na esálelo<br>na yó?                                  | What do you make in your shop?                      |
|   | -B-   |
| ekeko, bı-  | picture, sculpture, statue                          |
| mpémbe, m-  | white; chalk; ivory                                 |
| nzoku, n-   | elephant  |
| libáyá, ma-   | wood, board   |
| 10. Biskeko ya mpémbe ya nzoku<br>ná ya mabáyá.                       | Sculpture in ivory and wood.                        |
|   | -A-   |
| 11. Nakoki kotala yango na<br>ntángu ya mosálá?                       | Can I visit your shop during<br>working hours?      |

-B-

liloba, ma-

word; order (for  
merchandise)

12. Mpó na nini té? Why not?
13. Tozali na biloko míngi té  
ya kotéka, kási okoki  
kopésa maloba mpó tósala  
eloko olingí.
- We don't have many things to  
sell, but you can order what  
you want us to make.

-A-

14. Ntángu bóni okoki kozila  
mpó ózwá yangó? How long do you have to wait  
for them?

-B-

15. Káka mikolo mibale too  
misátu. Only two or three days.

-B-

16. Bofungolaka ntángu nini? What hours are you open?

-A-

17. Na huit heures tii na midi,  
mpé na trois heures tii  
na sept heures ya mpókwa.
- From eight until noon, and from  
three until seven in the after-  
noon.

-B-

18. Malamu. Lóbí. Fine. See you tomorrow.

-A-

19. Lóbí. See you tomorrow.

## USEFUL PHRASES

Kiliyó ebukáni.	The pencil is broken.
Ekomeli ya mái ya mokanda ebukáni.	The pen is broken.
Lifungóla ebukáni.	The key is broken.
Pó sita efungwamaka ntángu níni?	What hours is the post office open?
Tembélé na káti ya Kinsásá ntálo bóni?	How much does it cost to send a letter within Leopoldville?
Tembélé na Kinsásá tíí na Kisanganí ntálo bóni?	How much does it cost to send a letter from Leopoldville to Stanleyville?
Palato atíki mikanda.	The postman left some mail.
Palato ayéí na mikanda.	The postman brought the mail.
Esíká ya kobwaka mikanda ezali na nsúka ya balabálá.	There's a mail box/post office on the corner of the street.
Nazwi masíni ya koseba kiliyó na esíká ya kotéka búuku.	I got a pencil sharpener at the bookstore.
Naséngí bifándeli mpó na kelási.	I ordered some seats/desks for the school.
Libóké etíndámi na avió.  kiliyó, kiliyó (crayon) ekomeli, bi-	The package was sent by airmail.  pencil; legal charges, costs writing instrument, writing material
lifungóla, ma- pó sita (poste)	key  post office, postal service, mail box

témbélé (timbre)	postage-stamp
kátí	in, inside (of), in the middle of, among, center, middle, inside
ntálo, ntálu, n-	price, number
palató	errand boy, messenger, postman
-bwaka	to throw; reject, renounce, throw-out, disown
balabálá	street, (broad) road
-seba	to sharpen, file, whet; draw palm wine
-séngé, -sénga	to ask for, beg, order (merchandise)
efándeli, bi-	seat, chair
libóké, ma-	bunch, group, pack, package, swarm
avió (avion)	airplane, airmail

## NOTES

## 13.1 Passive

Libóké etíndámí na avió.

The passive extension /-am/ refers to something done by someone/something other than the subject of the verb, e.g., /Mónoko ya ndáko ekangwámí na mwána/. 'The door is/has been opened by the child.' The passive also occurs without an expressed agent, i.e., without /na/ and the doer of the action, e.g., /Libóké etíndámí na avió/, 'The package was sent by airplane.' /na avió/ is not the agent, but the means used by the unexpressed agent.

*/-am-/ after primary vowels in some verbs is /-em-/, e.g., /Mónokó ya ndáko ekangémí/, 'The door has been closed'. */-am-/* after secondary vowels is */-em-/* or */-om-/* as determined by vowel harmony.*

### 13.2 Ingressive Stative: Reciprocal

Mikolo mikomí mosiká tookeyókana lisusu nsango té.

Nabósáni kotinda chec na magazini.

The ingressive stative extension */-an-/* refers to something that gets done, reaches or attains a certain state, becomes in a certain condition often with the help of the subject of the verb. The ingressive stative can be very confusing to speakers of English and French because it translates into a number of their grammatical categories: as (1) a passive, (2) a stative, (3) a reciprocal, or (4) a reflexive. But regardless of the translation, the student must remember that the basic idea is that of becoming or arriving at the state given in the verb stem, e.g., /Namónání na yé./, 'I was seen by him', or 'I got seen by him'; 'I was seen with him', or 'I got seen with him! 'We saw each other', or 'we got seen by each other'. Consider also /Monokó ya ndáko ekangwáni./ 'The door is open', 'The door got open', 'The door has come open'.

The plural of the ingressive stative is usually reciprocal, i.e., 'to do for one another', as in the dialogue /Mikolo mikomí mosiká tookeyókana lisusu nsango té/, 'we haven't heard from each other for a long time.', or 'we haven't been heard from (let ourselves be heard from) for a long time.'

### 13.3 /mikolo mikomí mosiká/

/mikolo mikomí mosiká/, 'It has been a long time since that'..., is a fixed expression, i.e., no changes or substitutions can be made in this construction, e.g., /mbúla/, 'years', cannot be substituted for /mikolo/, 'days'.

## 13.4 Instrument Nouns, Type 1

esáleli

Instrument nouns of most commonplace things have the E-BI prefixes, the applicative extension, and an /-i/ suffix and mean the instrument or tool of the base, e.g., /esáleli/, literally 'doer', 'thing to do with', i.e., 'tool', 'instrument', and /ezaleli/, 'thing to sit in', 'seat', 'chair'.

## 13.5 Locative Nouns, Type 1

esálelo

Locative nouns have the E-BI prefixes, the applicative extension, and an /-o/ suffix and mean the place to do or for doing something, e.g., /esálelo/, literally 'place to work', i.e., 'shop', 'workroom'.

## 13.6 Avoidance of Base Repetition

Mwáá bisáleli mókó mpó na taliyé na ngái.

Lingala usually avoids the repetition of the same base in a sentence. In the sentence above from the dialogue, the French loanword /taliyé/, 'workshop', is used instead of /esálelo/, 'workshop', because the base /-sál-/ is used earlier in the sentence in /bisáleli/, 'tools'.

The same applies to having a verb and its object from the same base. Any such combination as 'to walk a walk', will be avoided and words from different bases will be used or the object will be omitted. However, it is not uncommon for both the subject and the verb to have the same base.

## 13.7 Instrument Nouns, Type 2

Some instrument nouns are marked by the LI-MA prefix class and either an /-a/ or /-á/ suffix, e.g., /lifungóla/, 'key', and /lisálá/, 'cultivated field'.

## 13.8 Instrument Nouns, Type 3

Some abstract instrument nouns have the LI-MA prefixes and an /-i/ suffix, e.g., /lítálisi/, 'demonstration', 'a showing'.

## 13.9 Expletive

Bakosála lítálisi na lisálá.

The third person plural is used as an expletive, i.e., translates 'there is/are', e.g., /Bakosála lítálisi na lisálá./, 'There will be a demonstration'. Compare Note 10.2.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize all verbs.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Nazalí kokomela moningá<br>na ngái mokandá.  | I'm writing a letter to my friend.   |
| Tozalí kokomela baningá<br>na bísu mikandá.   | We are writing letters to our friends.   |
| 2. Asómbáki mwáa esáleli mókó<br>mpó na taliyé na yé.<br><br>Basómbáki mwáa bísaleli<br>mókó mpó na bataliyé<br>na bangó. | He bought a tool for his shop.<br><br>They bought some tools for their shops.                            |
| 3. Motu óyo azalí kosála<br>ezaleli ya mabáyá.<br><br>Batu óyo bazalí kosála<br>bizaleli ya mabáyá.                       | The man is making a wooden chair.<br><br>The men are making chairs out of wood.                          |
| 4. Bakosála lítálisi na<br>lisálá ya Pierre.<br><br>Bakosála matálisi na<br>masálá ya Pierre.                             | There will be a demonstration in Pierre's field.<br><br>There will be demonstrations in Pierre's fields. |

5. Mokonzi atíndí móñoko  
na mwána. The chief sent a message by  
the boy.
- Bakonzi batíndí míñoko  
na bána. The chiefs sent messages by  
the boys.
6. Okoki kopésa ngái lisálisi?  
Bokoki kopésa bísu lisálisi? Can you give me some help?  
Can you give us some help?
7. Tata atíndéli ngái mokanda  
na mbóngó na káti.  
Batata batíndéli bísu  
míkanda na mbóngó na káti. My father sent me a letter  
with money in it.  
Our fathers sent us letters  
with money in them.
8. Atúni na motu óyo epái  
alálaka.  
Batúni na batu óyo epái  
balálaka. He asked the man where he  
lives.  
They asked the men where they  
lived.
9. Naákokomela moníngá na  
ngái mokanda.  
Toókokomela baníngá na  
bísu míkanda. I'm writing a letter to my  
friend.  
We are writing letters to our  
friends.
10. Apésí yo esáleli.  
Bapésí bínu bísáleli. He gave you the tool.  
They gave you the tools.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Naákokomela moníngá na  
ngái mokanda. I'm writing my friend a letter.
2. Naákokoma nkómbo ya  
bayékoli. I'm writing the names of the  
students.
3. Magazini nyónso bizali  
na nkómbo ya bayékoli. All the stores have the names  
of the students.

4. Magazini nyónso bizali na  
bikeko ya miké ya mabáyá. All the stores have small wood statues.
5. Áwa basálaka bikeko ya  
miké ya mabáyá. Here they make little wooden statues.
6. Áwa basálaka mikolo nyónso. Here they work every day.
7. Áwa batékaka mpembé ya nzoku mikolo nyónso. Here they sell ivory every day.
8. Áwa batékaka mpembé ya nzoku kaka mokolo ya mposo. Here they sell ivory only on Saturday.
9. Nazalaka na ndáko kákamokolo ya mposo. I'm at home only on Saturday.
10. Nazalaka na ndáko nsima ya ngonga ya nsambo ya mpókwa. I am home after seven P.M.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nayékwisi bayékoli kokoma. I taught the students how to write.
2. Alobi na bayékoli bákoma. She told the students to write.
3. Alobi na bána básálisana. She told the children to help each other.
4. Tolíngi bána básálisana. We want the children to help each other.
5. Tolíngi kolálisa bána. We want to put the children to sleep.
6. Bazali kolálisa bána. They are putting the children to bed.
7. Bazali kobímisa voiture. They are getting the car out.

8. Azali kobimisa voiture. He is getting the car out.
9. Azali kobimisela ngái voiture. He is getting the car out for me.
10. Nalobelí yé ábimisela ngái voiture. I asked him to get the car out for me.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Sika óyo ekómi ntángu ya mosálá. It's time to start to work.
2. Sika áwa ekómi ntángu ya mosálá. It's time to start to work.
3. Sika áwa tókende ntángu ekoki. It's time to go.
4. Sika óyo tókende ntángu ekoki. It's time to go.
5. Ntángu ya kokende ekoki. It's time to go.
6. Ntángu ya kolía ekoki. It's time to eat.
7. Ntángu ya kosálisa bána ekoki. It's time to help the children.
8. Ntángu ya kobanda kelásı ekoki. It's time to start class.  
It's time to leave for school.
9. Ntángu ya kofungola magazini ekoki. It's time to open the store.
10. Ntángu ya kokanga magazini ekoki. It's time to close the store.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Monoko ya ndako ekangémi. The door is closed.  
The door has been closed.
2. Monoko ya ndako ekangwáni. The door is open.  
The door has come open.
3. Monoko ya ndako ekangwámí. The door is opened.  
The door has been opened.
4. Monoko ya ndako ezalákí  
ya kokangwama ntángu  
nakómákí. The door was open(ed) when  
I arrived.
5. Monoko ya ndako ezali  
kokangwana. The door comes open.  
The door won't stay shut.
6. Monoko ya ndako ezali  
kokangwana. The door opens/swings/pushes  
open. (though it is closed).
7. Monoko ya ndako ezali ya  
kokangwama té. The door is closed (but not  
locked).
8. Monoko ya ndako ezali ya  
kokangwama. The door is opened back/stand-  
ing open.
9. Monoko ya ndako efungwámáki  
na moyékwisi. The door was opened by the  
teacher.
10. Monoko ya ndako efungwamaka  
ntángu nyónso na moyékwisi. The door is always opened by  
the teacher.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Míkanda mikomámáki na  
bayékoli. The letters were written by  
the students.
2. Bíkeko bisómbámáki na  
bayékoli. The statues were purchased by  
the students.

3. B̄ikeko b̄isómbámáki na  
palatō. The statues were bought by  
the postman.
4. Mafungóla mazwámáki na  
palatō. The keys were taken by the  
postman.
5. Mafungóla mazwámáki na  
basálī. The keys were taken by the  
workmen.
6. Témbele bimónámáki na  
basálī. The stamps were found by the  
workmen.
7. Témbele bimónámáki na  
moningá na ngái. The stamps were found by my  
friend.
8. Libóké etíndámí na moningá  
na ngái. The package was sent by my  
friend.
9. Libóké etíndámí na avio. The package was sent by airmail.
10. Libóké etíndámí na  
Bruxelles mpó na Kongo. The package was sent from  
Brussels to the Congo.

## Unit 14

## Basic Sentences

-A-

mbala, m-

time, times, often,  
mostly

1. Mbala bóni basálaka election na mbóka na binú? How often do you have elections in your country?

-B-

2. Election ya président too ya bourgmestres? Election for president or for mayors?

-A-

3. Nyónso mibale. Both.

-B-

4. Óyo ya président ezali na nsima ya mbúla minei nyónso, óyo ya babourg-mestres nsima ya mbúla mibale. The one for president is every four years, the one for mayors every two years.

-A-

5. Bozali na baParlementaires bóni? How many members of Parliament are there?

-B-

6. Nakanísí ntíkú nsambo too mwambe. I believe seventy or eighty.

-A-

'voter'

to vote

7. Banáni bakoki kovoter na election? Who can vote in the election?

-B-

8. Batu bazali na mbúla ntúkú mibale na mókó tii na likolo. Those who have reached the age of twenty-one and over.

-A-

- ekolo, bi- tribe, race, region of origin, people of same place or language

9. Mpó na kovoter, batalaka ekolo? With regard to voting, is tribe considered?

-B-

- se that...

10. Té, wána té, kaka se mbúla na ndéngé ya motu okovoter. No, not that, only the age and competence of the person you will vote for.

-A-

11. Election ya nsíma ezaláki ntango nini? When was the last election?

-B-

12. Ezaláki na mbúla eleki. It was last year.

-A-

13. Election yangó ezaláki mpó ya président too ya babourgmestres? Was that election for president or for mayors?

## -B-

14. Ezaláki mpó ya bourgmestres. It was for mayors.
15. Mpó ya président, óyo mbúla  
mísátu. The one for president was  
three years ago.

## USEFUL PHRASES

Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kobéte ndembó.	He's teaching the children how to play soccer.
Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kozinga bolangítı.	He's showing the children how to fold the blankets.
Aákolakisa bána ndéngé ya kosakana.	He's showing the children how to amuse themselves.
Ekipe ya Lovanium elongí na lisanu.	The team from Lovanium won the game.
Ayambi ndembó.	He caught the ball.
Atíi monyámá.	He made a goal.
Atíi ntembe na ngái.	He discussed it with me.
Ndámbo ya batu bamatáki na masúwa.	Part of the men got on the boat.
Ndámbo ya batu babimáki na masúwa.	Part of the men got off the boat.
Ndámbo ya batu bakótáki na otobisi.	Part of the men got in the bus.
Ndámbo ya batu bakítáki na otobisi.	Part of the men got out of the bus.
-laka	to give advice; set a time; promise; order
-lakisa	to show, display, teach, instruct

ndembó, n-	rubber, ball
-zinga	to fold (up), roll (up); surround, encircle
bolangítí, bolangísí	blanket
-sakana, sana	to play, amuse oneself, have a good time
ekípe (équipe)	team, squad, crew, gang
-lónga	to be successful, win, be proved right
lisano, lisantu, ma-	game
-yamba	to accept, believe, receive, entertain, welcome, guide, steer, catch
monyáma, mi-	net
ntembe, n-	discussion, argument, doubt, suspicion, hesitation
ndámbo, n-	part, piece, share, half
masúwa	boat, ship
otobísí (autobus)	bus

## 14.1 Miscellaneous Nouns

ekólo ekeko

A number of different kinds of nouns, such as collectives and human artifacts, are marked by the E-BI prefix class and an /-o/ or /-u/ suffix, e.g., /ekólo/, 'tribe', 'region or origin', /-kóla/, 'to grow (up)', /ekeko/, 'picture', 'statue', /-keka/, 'to see', 'look', 'examine'.

## 14.2 /se/

/se/ introduces subordinate clauses and freely substitutes with /te/. Compare Note 6.5

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Mbala bóní basálaka election? How often are elections held?
2. Mbala bóní osílí okeí na  
Kongó? How many times have you been in  
in the Congo?
3. Mbala bóní osílí okeí na  
Kisanganí? How many times have you been  
to Stanleyville?
4. Mbúla bóní osáli na  
Kisanganí? How long have you been in  
Stanleyville?
5. Mbúla bóní osáli na Matádi? How long have you been in  
Matadi?
6. Ntango níní ozalákí na  
Matádi? How long were you at Matadi?
7. Ntango níní ozalákí na Leo? How long were you at Leopold-  
ville?
8. Mbúla bóní okosála na Leo? How long will you be in  
Leopoldville?
9. Mbúla bóní okosála na Bóma? How long will you be in Boma?
10. Mikolo bóní okosála mpó  
okokóma na Bóma? How long will it be until you  
arrive in Boma?

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Batu nyónso minei baleki  
mbúla ntukú minei. All four of the men are over  
forty years old.
2. Batu nyónso minei bazalákí  
awa mbúla eleki. All four of the men were here  
last year.

3. Ndámbo ya batu bazalákí  
áwa mbúla eleki.  
Some of the men were here last year.
4. Ndámbo ya batu bakozala  
áwa mbúla ekoyáa.  
Some of the men will be here next year.
5. Bikólo nyónso bikozala  
áwa mbúla ekoyáa.  
All of the tribe will be here next year.
6. Bikólo nyónso bizalákí  
na ndáko ya mokonzi.  
The whole tribe was present at the chief's house.
7. Bourgmestre ya Léo deux  
azalákí na ndáko ya  
mokonzi.  
The mayor of Leopoldville II was at the chief's house.
8. Bourgmestre ya Léo deux  
aákokonza malámu.  
The mayor of Leopoldville II does a good job of managing.
9. Mokonzi ya mbóka ya bísu  
aákokonza malámu.  
The chief of our village rules well.
10. Mokonzi ya mbóka ya bísu  
alingí ndáko ya síka.  
The chief of our village would like to have a new house.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

Pluralize all nouns possible and concordize verbs.

1. Liyébísí etíndámí na  
molakísí.  
Mayébísí matíndámí na  
balakísí.  
The announcement was sent to (or by) the teacher.  
The announcements were sent to (or by) the teachers.
2. Móbongísí bibendé abosánákí  
ebételí na yé.  
Babongísí bibendé babosánákí  
bibételí na bangó.  
The mechanic forgot his hammer.  
The mechanics forgot their hammers.

3. Ekangeli ya monoko ebukáni. The door handle got broken.  
Bikangeli ya minoko bibukáni. The door handles got broken.
4. Lifúta na ngái ekoki té na libótá mobimba. My salary isn't sufficient for my entire family.  
Mafúta na bísu mokoki té na mabótá mobimba. Our salaries aren't sufficient for our entire families.  
There isn't enough cooking oil for our entire families.
5. Na makanisi na yé, alingí kopésa ndingisa ya kobina. It's his intention to give permission for the dance.  
Na makanisi na bangó, balingí kopésa ndingisa ya kobina. It's their intention to give permission for the dance.
6. Mokomi ya mokandá óyo ayébáni té. The writer of this document is unknown.  
Bakomi ya mikanda óyo bayébáni té. The writers of these documents are unknown.
7. Atiyáni ntembe na ngái. He discussed it with me.  
Batiyáni ntembe na bísu. They discussed it with us.
8. Azali kozila mbótama ya mwána na yé ya libosó. She is awaiting the birth of her first child.  
Bazali kozila mbótama ya bána na bangó ya libosó. They are waiting for the birth of their first children.
9. Moyékoli akanisé te kelásí ekangémí. The students thought school was closed.  
Bayékoli bakanisé te bakelasi bikangémí. The students though the schools were closed.

10. Mosáleli aákopalola mbálá. The servant is going to peel the potato.
- Basáleli baákopalola mbálá. The servants are going to peel the potatoes.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Náni azali mokonzi ya mbóka ya bínú? Who is the chief of your village?
2. Banáni bazali na mokonzi ya mbóka ya bínú? Who is with the chief of your village?
3. Banáni bakoki kovoter na election? Who can vote in the elections?
4. Banáni bakoki kosálisa batu ya mosálá? Who can help the employees?
5. Banáni bakoki kosála na letá? Who can work for the government?

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Ebongáki názila mbúla misátu libosó ya kokende na Mpútú. I had to wait three years before going to Europe.
2. Ebongí názila mbúla misátu libosó ya kokende na Mpútú. I have to wait three years before going to Europe.
3. Ebongí názila tíi mokolo ya mosálá moko mpó na kosómaba bilambá wána. I'll have to wait until Monday to buy those clothes.
4. Ebongí názila tíi mokolo ya mosálá minei mpó na kosómaba bilambá wána. I'll have to wait until Thursday to buy those clothes.

5. Sóki oyáki té, mbe naziláki If you hadn't come, I would  
     tíi mokolo ya mosálá minei have had wait until Thursday  
     mpó na kosómaba bílamba wáná. to buy the clothes.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Bandá akendéki nainu akoméli Since he left, he hasn't  
     bísú mokanda té. written us a letter.
2. Bandá mbúla eleki nainu He hasn't written us a letter  
     akoméli bísú mokanda té. since last year.
3. Úta mbúla eleki nainu akoméli He hasn't written us a letter  
     bísú mokanda té. since last year.
4. Úta mbúla eleki nainu nabéti I haven't played soccer again  
     lisúsú ndembó té. since last year.
5. Tíi na mbúla ekoyáa nakobéta I won't play soccer again  
     lisúsú ndembó té. until next year.
6. Tíi na mbúla ekoyáa election There won't be another election  
     mosúsú ekozala té. until next year.
7. Tíi nsíma ya mbúla misátu, There won't be another election  
     selection mosúsú ekozala té. for three years.
8. Tíi nsíma ya mbúla misátu You will live here for three  
     bokolála na esiká óyo. years.
9. Tíi na ebandeli ya mbúla You will live here until the  
     ekoyáa, bokolála na beginning of next year.  
     esiká óyo.
10. Tíi na nsúka ya mbúla ekoyáa, You will live here until the  
     bokolála na esiká óyo. end of next year.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Bána baákosakana na káti ya ndáko mpó na mbúla. The children will play inside because of the rain.
2. Bána baákosakana na libánda mpó likoló ezali malámu. The children will play outside because the weather is nice.
3. Bána batíndámi na molakisi básakana na libánda mpó na likoló ezali malámu. The children were sent out to play by the teacher because the weather is nice.
4. Bána batíndámi na molakisi bámóno lítálisi. The children were sent to see the exposition by the teacher.
5. Bána batíndámi bámóno bítálisi na molakisi. The children were sent with the teacher to see the exposition.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 8

1. Madésu malámbámi na bói. These beans were prepared by the houseboy.
2. Toókoyókama na bói. We will be (over) heard by the houseboy.
3. Toókoyókana na bói. We are on friendly terms with the houseboy.
4. Toókoyókana na batu míngi. We have a lot of friends.
5. Président ayébámi na batu míngi. The President is known by many people.

## 14.3 Ambiguity of Agent and Indirect Object

Liyébisi etíndámi na molakisi.

The above sentence would usually be understood to mean, 'The notice was sent by the teacher', however, it could mean, 'The notice was sent to the teacher'. To specify only 'to', /mpó na/

is used, e.g., /liyébisa etindámi mpó na molakisi/, 'The notice was sent to the teacher.'

#### 14.4 Lovanium University

Lovanium, the national university of the Congo, is beautifully laid out on a plateau about eight miles from downtown Leopoldville.

#### 14.5 Leopoldville II

Leopoldville is divided into 'communes' each with a 'bourgmestre'. Though the communes are part of a larger municipal organization, they do have a great deal of autonomy.

## Unit 15

## Basic Sentences

-A-

mokóló, ba-

grown person, adult

1. Okosála níni, sókó okómí  
mokóló? What are you going to do when  
you are grown?

-B-

'ministre'

minister (cabinet post)

2. Na makanísi na ngái, nalingaka In my opinion, I'd like to be  
nákoma ministre. a cabinet minister.

-A-

soda, ba-

soldier

3. Kásí libosó okosála But first, aren't you going to  
mosálá ya soda? do military service?

-B-

4. Té tata, mosálá wáná No, Sir, I don't want that job.  
nalingí yangó té.

-pusa

to surpass, exceed, be  
very, be too much

-nyókolo

to mistreat, torture,  
annoy, oppress

5. Epusí monyókoli míngi. That's much too wearisome.

-A-

6. Zilá, nayébisa yo ndénége Just a minute, I'd like to tell  
ya mpási tomónáka. you how we used to suffer.

-B-

7. Ozáláká soda?

You used to be a soldier?

-A-

8. Áa, mwána na ngái, koloba té, mosálá ya sodá ekómí mosálá ya mbóngó.

Oh, my child, don't mention that, military service has become a well-paying occupation.

9. Ezaláká bísu, makambo nyónso mpásı.

In our time, everything was difficult.

-B-

10. Obandáká soda na mbúla bóni?

At what age did you start military service?

-A-

11. Nayéba wápi. Ntángu wáná makambo ya kokomisa nkombó ya bána na búuku ezaláká té.

I have no idea. In that time the names (births) of children were not recorded.

-B-

12. Bóongó bozaláká kosála ndéngé nínı?

Well then, how did it use to be done?

-A-

-úmela

to remain, stay on,  
stay away

13. Tíká násilisa elambá ya batu euméli míngi.

Go away and let me finish this garment.

-B-

14. Tíkálá malámu, nakeí na ngái.

Goodby, I'm going home.

## -A-

15. Kéndé malámu, óyáka  
 kotála ngái ntángu  
 mosusu.
- Goodby, come to see me again  
 some time.

## USEFUL PHRASES

Azali kobolosé sokoto.	He's brushing the uniform.
Azali kotiya silásí na sapáto.	He's polishing his shoes.
Azali kongengisa lifúngú.	He's shining the buttons.
Azali kotonga butó.	He's sewing on a button.
Matítí ya bolósí masílí.	The brush is worn out.
Abunáká na etumba.	He fought in the war.
Babomáká yé na etumba.	He was killed in the war.
Azali mobangé.	He's an old man.
Azali mokúsé.	He's short.
Azali mabé,	He's ugly.
Ezali motúya malámu.	It's cheap.
Ezali ntálú makásí.	It's expensive.
-bolosé (brosser)	to brush
bolósí (brosse)	brush
sokoto	uniform, military jacket/ clothing
silásí (cirage)	polish, shoepolish
-ngenge	to shine, blaze
-tonga	to bind, tie, join, twist, braid, plait, weave, sew, expand, enlarge
butó (bouton)	button

litíti, ma-	blade of grass, sheet of paper, hair, fur, down, bristle
-buna, -bunda	to fight, wage war, wrestle, struggle
etumba, bi-	war, fight, battle, conflict
-boma	to kill, murder, hunt, catch, damage badly, destroy, ex- tinguish, erase, wipe (off), do away with
.	
mobangé, ba-	old person
mokúsé, mi-	short, small
motúya, mi-	price, value, number

## NOTES

## 15.1 Intermediate Past

Náyébisa yó ndéngé ya mpásí tomónáká.

The intermediate past is marked by the /-ák-/ extension and a high-tone imperfective suffix /-á/, e.g., /tomónáká/, 'we saw', 'we used to see'. In general, the intermediate past refers to something that happened more than a month ago but not more than about thirty years ago. However, as with the other tenses, the time referent is not exact and refers to something that took place between recently and a long time ago. It very often translates 'used to' in English and into the imperfect in French.

## 15.2 Distant Past

The distant past is marked by a high tone imperfective suffix /-á/ and refers to something that took place (usually) more than a generation ago, i.e., a long time ago, e.g., /akúfá/, 'he died (a long time ago)'.

## 15.3 Comparison of Intensity

Epusí monyókoli míngi.

Intensity or excess degree of something is expressed by /-pusa/, 'to surpass', 'be very', 'be too much', e.g., /Epusí monyókoli míngi/, 'It's much too wearisome', literally, 'It exceeds weariness much'. See also Note 9.1.

## 15.4 Comparison of Degree

Aleki mwásí na monéne.

Comparison of degree is expressed by /-leka/, 'to pass by', 'exceed', /Aleki mwásí na monéne/, 'He's bigger than his wife', literally 'He exceeds his wife in bigness'.

The 'superlative' is shown by /-leka/ plus /nyónso/, 'all', 'every', /Aleki mibáli nyónso na molái/, 'He's the tallest of the men', literally, 'He exceeds all the men in length'.

## 15.5 Inversion of Subject and Verb

Ezaláká bísu, makambo nyónso mpási.

One way of forming temporal subordinate clauses is to reverse the order of the subject and verb. In this type of construction, the verb prefix is /e-/ . In the sentence from the dialogue, /ezaláká bísu/ means 'when we were', 'during the time we were', 'in our time'.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Bambúla eleki míngi mokóló óyo azaláká soda. This man was a soldier many years ago.
2. Bambúla eleki míngi nazaláká na ndáko óyo. Many years ago I lived in that house.
3. Ntángu nazaláká mwána nazaláká na ndáko óyo. When I was a child, I lived in that house.

4. Ntángu nazaláká mwána,  
banyama míngi bazaláká áwa. When I was a child, there were many animals here.
5. Ntángu tokendáká na mbóka,  
**banyama míngi bazaláká áwa.** When we moved from the village, there were many animals here.
6. Ntángu tokendáká na mbóka,  
tatá atíkáláká na mosálá ya soda. When we left the village, my father was a soldier.
7. Ntángu mamá akúfáká, tatá atíkáláká na mosálá ya soda. When mother died, father was still a soldier.
8. Ntángu mamá akúfáká, nazalaká naino mwána moké. When mother died, I was still a small child.
9. Tatá asómbáká ndáko na bísu  
ntángu nazaláká naino mwána moké. Father bought our house when I was still a small child.
10. Tatá asómbáká ndáko na bísu  
ntángu ayáká na Léó. Father bought this house when he came to Leopoldville.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Alekí mwásí na monéne. He is bigger than his wife.
2. Alekí mwásí na molai. He is taller than his wife.
3. Alekí mwásí na bambúla. He is (a little) older than his wife.
4. Alekí mwásí na mokusé. He is shorter than his wife.
5. Alekí mwásí na mobangé. He is (much) older than his wife.

Pattern Drill 2

1. Mótuka óyo eleki wána  
 kitóko. This car is prettier than that one.

2. Mótuka óyo elekí wána na makásí. This car is better-built than that one.
3. Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na ntálo. This car is more expensive than that one.
4. Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na kotámbola. This car runs faster than that one.
5. Mótuka óyo elekí wáná na molai. This car is longer than that one.

Pattern Drill 3

1. Mótuka óyo epusi kitóko. This car is very beautiful.
2. Mótuka óyo epusi makásí. This car is very well-built.
3. Mótuka óyo epusi ntálo. This car is too expensive.
4. Mótuka óyo epusi kotámbola. This car is very fast.
5. Mótuka óyo epusi molai. This car is too long.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ntángu nazaláká na Kinsásá, nazaláká kofanda epái na yé. When I lived in Leopoldville.  
I stayed at his house.
2. Ntángu nazaláká moyékolí, nazaláká kofanda epái na yé. When I was a student, I used to live at his house.
3. Ntángu nazaláká moyékolí, nazaláká kobima míngi. When I was a student, I used to go out a lot.
4. Libosó tata ákúfa, nazaláká kobima míngi. Before my father died, I used to go out a lot.
5. Libosó tata ákúfa, apésáká ngái móтука. Before my father died, he gave me a car.

6. Ntángu nasílisáká kelásı, apesáká ngái mótuka. After I finished school, he gave me a car.
7. Ntángu nasílisáká kelásı, nalukáká mosálá. After I finished school, I looked for a job.
8. Ntángu nazóngáká na Amérique, nalukáká mosálá. After I returned from America, I looked for a job.
9. Ntángu nazóngáká na Amérique, nazaláká kokomela baníngá ntángu mosúsú. After I returned from America, I used to write to my friends occasionally.
10. Ntángu nazaláká na ntángu, nazaláká kokomela baníngá ntángu mosúsú. When I had time, I used to write to my friends occasionally.

Pattern Drill 4

1. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya yó na mbúla. My son is older than yours.
2. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya yó na mayele. My daughter is smarter than yours.
3. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya yó na kitóko. My daughter is prettier than yours.
4. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya yó na molái. My son is taller than yours.
- 5.. Mwána na ngái alekí óyo ya yó na makásı. My son is stronger than yours.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Nazaláká kokéndé kolía epái na bangó ntángu mama akotáká lopítálo. I went to eat at their house when mother went to the hospital.
2. Nazaláká nainu mwána ntángu etumba ekweyaka na mboka. I was still a child when the war took place in our country.

3. Azaláká káká na mbúla zómi ntángu etumba ekwéyáká na mbóka. He was only ten years old when the war took place in our country.
4. Azaláká káká na mbúla zómi ntángu tata na yé akufáká. He was only ten years old when his father died.
5. Amekáká kozwá mosálá ntángu tata na yé akufáká. He tried to get a job when his father died.
6. Amekáká kozwá mosálá nsíma ya mbótáma na mwána. He tried to get a job after the birth of his son.
7. Ayáká na Kinsásá nsíma ya mbótáma na mwána. He came to Leopoldville after the birth of his son.
8. Ayáká na Kinsásá ntángu azaláká kosála na masúwa. He came to Leopoldville while he was working on a riverboat.
9. Nayébáká yé ntángu azaláká kosála na masúwa. I knew him while he was working on a riverboat.
10. Nayébáká yé libosó álongwa na Kinsangani. I knew him before he left Stanleyville.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Basodá bazingí mbóka. The soldiers surrounded the village.
2. Basodá baákotiya silásí ya sapáto. The soldiers are polishing their shoes.
3. Momemí akendéki koluka silásí ya sapáto. The porter has gone to get some shoepolish.
4. Momemí akendéki koluka butó ya sokoto. The porter has gone to get some buttons for his uniform.
5. Sodá óyo angangísáki butó ya sokoto. This soldier shined his uniform buttons.

6. Soda óyo alekí wána na molai. This soldier is taller than that one.
7. Mótuka óyo elekí wána na molai. This car is longer than that one.
8. Mótuka óyo epusi ntálo. This car is too expensive.
9. Bolósí wána epusi ntálo. That brush is too expensive.
10. Bolósí wána ekómí ya kála. That brush is old.

## Unit 16

## Basic Sentence

-A-

1. Libóké ya batu wáná ezali  
kosálá níní? What is that group of men  
doing?

-B-

-pasola to tear, split, cleave,  
saw, tear up, break up,  
cut through

nzelá, nzilá road, way, path, means,  
permission

2. Bazalí kopasola nzelá. They are building a road through.

-A-

3. Nzelá yangó ekende tíí  
wápi? How far is the road supposed  
to go?

-B-

4. Nakanísí eékokóma tíí na  
Matádi. I believe it's going as far  
as Matadi.

-A-

5. Bakosála mikolo bóní na  
mayéle na yo. How long will it take to build  
in your estimation?

-B-

ngúyá, n- strength, power, ability,  
quality

6. Sókó bazalí na nguya, bakoki kosala sánzá misátu too minei. If they keep at it, they can do it in three or four months.

-A-

7. Áwa tíi na Matadi bakilo-metres bóni? How many kilometers is it from here to Matadi?

-B-

8. Na avio toó na móтука? By plane or by car?

-A-

9. Na móтука. By car.

-B-

10. Nakanísí nkámá minei kilometres. I believe it's four hundred kilometers.

-A-

11. Bóongó na avio? And by plane?

-B-

12. Nkámá misátu na ntukú motóbá na mitánu. Three hundred sixty-five kilometers.

-A-

13. Nzela ya ndéngé nini bakosála? What kind of road are they building?

-B-

síméti (ciment) cement

14. Liboso, bakotiya mabángá basangísí na síméti. First, they will pour stone(s) mixed with cement.

-túta	to strike, beat, mash, crush, bump (against)
-simba	to hold, seize
libendé, ma-	rod, post, pole, tamper, tamping stick

15. Bakotúta na libendé mpó  
te esimba makásí. They will beat it out (smooth)  
with a tamper to make it hold  
(together) tightly.

-A-

16. Bóongó na nsíma? And then?

- B -

-sopa	to pour, spill overturn, spread, unload
mokóbo, mi-	color, paint
-yinda	to become dark, black, dirty
mwíndu, míndu, moíndo	black, dark, Negro; bad character/intention; with dislike/aversion

17. Bakosopa mokóbo ya mwíndu likoló mpó te siméti na mabángá bisimba makásı. They'll spread some black colored material on top so the cement and rocks will bond together well.

- A -

18. Mokóbo yangó nkómbó níní? What's the name of the black-colored material?

- B -

falanse'	French
'goudron'	tar

19. Nkómbo na yangó na  
falansé goudron. It's called 'goudron' in French.

## -A-

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| putulú   | cinders, ashes, dust,<br>powder                        |
| 20. Siméti nini bakotiya, ya<br>putulú too ya mái-mái? | What kind of cement are they<br>to use, liquid or dry? |

## -B-

- |                     |         |
|---------------------|---------|
| 21. Óyo ya mái-mái. | Liquid. |
|---------------------|---------|

## USEFUL PHRASES

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Dzeké eékotóka mabelé.                                   | The steamshovel is digging up<br>the ground.            |
| Dzeké eékotímola libulú.                                 | The steamshovel is digging a<br>hole.                   |
| Dzeké eékotónisa mabelé na<br>kamio.                     | The steamshovel is filling<br>the trunk with earth.     |
| Mibáli baákotímola libélá ya<br>mái na piósí na mpáu.    | The men are digging a well<br>with picks and shovels.   |
| Mibáli baákotímola libélá ya<br>kabine na piósí na mpáu. | The men are digging a toilet<br>with picks and shovels. |
| Mibáli baákokunda tiyó ya mái.                           | The men are burying a water<br>pipe.                    |
| Mi báli baákokunda tiyó ya gaz.                          | The men are burying a gas pipe.                         |
| Mibáli baákopika nzeté ya<br>telefón.                    | The men are setting up a<br>telephone pole.             |
| Bilei bizali elengí.                                     | The food tastes good.                                   |
| Bilei bizali sukáli.                                     | The food tastes sweet.                                  |

Biléi bizali í ngai.	The food tastes sour.
Biléi bizali í bololo.	The food tastes bitter.
Biléi bizali í ya kopoló.	The food is rotten.
Biléi bizali í na móngwa.	The food is salted.
Biléi bizali í na móngwa míngi.	The food is too salty.
dzeké	steamshovel; earth mover, dump truck
-tóka	to draw water, dig out/up
mabelé	earth, ground, floor
-timola	to dig (up), turn over the soil
libúlú, ma-	well, pit, hole, trench, toilet
-tonda	to be(come) full, filled, fill
libélá, ma-	well, pit, hole, trench, toilet
kamíó (camion)	truck
mpáu, mpáo, m-	shovel, spade
piósí, (pioche)	pick, pickaxe
kabíné (cabinet)	toilet; excrement
-kunda	to bury, plant
tiyó (tuyau)	pipe, tube, hose, gas
'gaz'	gas
nzeté, n-	tree, stick, piece of wood
elengi	pleasing to the senses, good taste/smell; beauty

sukáli	sugar, candy; sweet
ngai	sour(ness)
bololo	bitter(ness), sour(ness)
-polo	to be(come) wet, soggy, rotten; be beaten, defeated
móngwa, ml-	salt

## NOTES

## 16.1 Subject with two verbs.

Batu balálaka áwa bakendéki lóbí.

Many subjects which have two verbs in Lingala translate into English and French as subject plus two verbs; but very often such a Lingala construction translates as subject plus adjectival relative clause plus verb, e.g., /Batu balálaka áwa bakendéki lóbí/, 'The people who live here left yesterday', literally, 'The people they live here they left yesterday'. Note that it is the first verb in this type of sentence that translates as a relative clause.

## 16.2 Immediate Past of /-longwa/

Alongwei epái azalákí kofwánda liboso.

The immediate past of /-longwa/ has /-e/ before the tense marker, e.g., /alongwei/, 'he has gone away'. See Note 2.9. Rule IV.

## 16.3 Indefinite Condition

Sóki osómbáká mókó, mbélé babóngisáká mosusu.

Indefinite or improbable condition is expressed by the intermediate past in both clauses and a particle such as /mbélé/ at the beginning of the result clause, e.g., /Sóki osómbáká mókó

mbélé babóngisáká mosúsu/, 'If you were to buy one (but you probably won't), then they would have the other one repaired'.

Some dialects of Lingala also express indefinite condition with the immediate past in the if-clause and an indefinite particle and the future in the result clause. Though the student may read or perhaps hear this, he should not use it because it does not usually occur in speech and is likely to be misunderstood.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Nzelá óyo eécoleka na Bóma.                            | This road goes to (through) Boma.                    |
| 2. Nzelá óyo <u>eékokómá tíí na</u><br><u>Bóma.</u>       | This road goes to (as far as) Boma.                  |
| 3. <u>Avío</u> eékokómá tíí na Boma.                      | The airplane is going as far as Boma.                |
| 4. Avío <u>ekómí</u> .                                    | The airplane has (just) arrived.                     |
| 5. <u>Bayékolí ya sika</u> bakómí.                        | The new students have (just) arrived.                |
| 6. Bayékolí ya sika <u>bazalí</u><br><u>bánsø baindu.</u> | The new students are all Africans/Negroes.           |
| 7. <u>Batu balálaka áwa</u> bazalí<br>bánsø baindu.       | The people who live here are all Negroes/Africans.   |
| 8. Batu balálaka áwa <u>bakendéki</u><br><u>lóbí.</u>     | The people who live here left yesterday.             |
| 9. <u>Basálí bapásólákí</u> nzilá<br>bakendéki lóbí.      | The workers who built the road left yesterday.       |
| 10. Basálí bapásólákí nzilá<br><u>bakozónga</u> lóbí.     | The workers who built the road will return tomorrow. |

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Mpó na níní libóké ya bána óyo eékozila lisúsu? Why is that group of children still waiting?
2. Libóké ya bána óyo eékozila molakisi. The group of children is waiting for the teacher.
3. Bána bakelásı bakosukola ndáko ya molakisi. The students will clean up the teacher's house.
4. Bána bakelásı bakosukola bizalelı. The students will wash off the chairs.
5. Babói baákotiya mokóbo na bizalelı. The houseboys are painting the chairs.
6. Babói baákosopa mabángá na nzela. The boys are spreading rock on the walkway.
7. Bangó bánsö baákosopa mabángá na nzela. They are all spreading stone on the roadway.
8. Bangó bánsö baákokende na Coq na avio. They are all going to Coquihatville by plane.
9. Mwána na ngái aákokende na Coq na avio. My son is going to Coquihatville by plane.
10. Mwána na ngái azalí na nguya míngi. My son is very strong.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Alongwei epái azaláki kofwánda liboso. He (has) moved. He (has) changed his address.

2. Alongwei na Lovaniúm akomí na Kinsásá. He has moved from Lovanium into the old section of Leopoldville.
3. Alongwei na mosálá. He quit his job.
4. Alongwei na etéyelo. He has quit school.
5. Alongwei na mosálá ya soda. He has resigned from the army.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Atíki komela likayá. He quit smoking.
2. Atíki mótsuka na ye. He parked his car.
3. Abóyi mótsuka na ye. He abandoned his car.
4. Abóyi mwási. He has left his wife for good.
5. Atíki mwási. He has left his wife at home.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Dzeké eekotiya mabelé na kamio. The steamshovel is loading dirt into the truck.
2. Basáli baákosopa mabelé na kamio. The workmen are unloading dirt from the truck.
3. Basáli baákobímisa bílóko na masini. The workmen are unloading the railroad car.
4. Basáli baákosopa mabángá na balabálá. The workmen are spreading rock on the road.

5. Kamíó eékosopa mabángá  
na balabálá. The truck is dumping rock on  
the road.
6. Kamíó ezali komema nzete  
ya telefón. The truck is carrying telephone  
poles.
7. Basáli baákopika mabendé  
ya telefón. The workmen are setting up  
telephone poles.
8. Mibáli batelémisi mabendé  
ya telefón. The men set up the telephone  
poles.
9. Mibáli batelémisi madésu  
na nzete. The men set up sticks for the  
beans.
10. Mibáli batondísaki libúlú  
na mabelé. The men filled the hole with  
dirt.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Akeí nsíma ya ndáko. He went to the toilet.
2. Akeí na Bóma na mótsuka. He went to Boma by car.
3. Akeí na Bóma na mótsuka  
na nzilá ya sika. He went to Boma by car by the  
new route.
4. Akeí na Bóma na nzilá ya  
masiní. He went to Boma by train.
5. Akeí na Brazza na masúwa  
ya nsúka. He went to Brazzaville on the  
last boat.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Otobísí ekéndé tíí wápi? How far is the bus supposed  
to go?
2. Otobísí ekómá tíí wápi? How far is the bus supposed  
to go?

3. Otobísí ekóma tíi na Lovaniúm. The bus is supposed to go far as Lovanium.
4. Otobísí eútí na Lovaniúm The bus came from Lovanium.
5. Otobísí eútaka na Lovaniúm. The bus comes from Lovanium.

Pattern Drill 2

1. Sókó oyáká leló, mbele napésáká yó nkámá mókó. If you were to come today, I'd give you a thousand francs.
2. Sókí osombáká mókó, mbele napésáká yó nkámá mókó. If you were to buy one, I'd give you a thousand francs.
3. Sókí osombáká mókó, mbele babongísáká mosusu. If you were to buy one, they would have the other one repaired.
4. Sókí obongísáká ndáko óyo, mbele babongísáká mosusu. If you were to have this house repaired, they would have the other one repaired.
5. Sókí obongísáká ndáko óyo, mbele okokáká kotékisa yango. If you were to repair this house, you would be able to sell at a profit.
6. Sókó oziláká sánzá mókó, mbele okokáká kotékisa yango. If you were to wait a month, you would be able to sell it at a profit.
7. Sókó oziláká sánzá mókó, mbele okendéké na Leo. If you waited a month, you would be able to go to Leopoldville.
8. Sókí ozaláká na nkótó mókó, mbele okendéké na Leo. If you had a thousand francs, you could go to Leopoldville.
9. Sókí ozaláká na nkótó mókó, mbele okokáká kosómba bilambá. If you had a thousand francs, you could buy some clothes.
10. Sókó okendé na Kinsásá, mbele okokáká kosómba bilambá. If you went to Leopoldville, you could buy some clothes.

## Unit 17

## Basic Sentences

-A-

sofélé, ba-  
(chauffeur)

driver, chauffeur

1. Ée! Sofélé, kanga mó tuka  
na yo kúna. Hey! Driver, stop your car  
over there.

-B-

2. Elóko níni nasálí kó  
gendarme? Nabomi moto? Well, officer, what did I do?  
Did I kill somebody?

-A-

mwinda

light, lamp

motáné

bright red/yellow/orange

-pela

to be on fire, burn, be lit

3. Ozali komóna mwinda té? Didn't you see the red light?  
4. Óyo ya motáné epeli mpó What (do you think) red lights  
na níni? are for?  
5. Oyébi koteleme mpó nakozila Don't you know to wait?  
moke té?

-B-

6. Pardon, namónáki mwinda I'm sorry. I didn't see the  
malámu té. light very well.

-A-

7. Omóni malámu té?  
'permis de conduire' You didn't see it very well?  
8. Lakísá ngái permis de driver's license  
conduire na yo. Show me your driver's license.

## -B-

9. Ezali té, mpó nabandi  
koyékola kotámbwisa  
mótuka káká sika.
- I don't have any because I've  
only just started to learn  
to drive.

## -A-

- mpáku, mpáko, m-
- tax, corvée labor
10. Boongó búuku na yo ya mpáku?
- And your identification book?
11. Ozali mpé na yangó té?
- Don't you have it either?

## -B-

- má
- Here! Take it!
- fúta
- to pay; atone, make  
up for
12. Má, yangó óyo. Kásí nainu  
nafútí mpáku ya mbúla  
óyo té.
- Here, take it. But I haven't  
paid my tax this year yet.

## -A-

13. Landá ngái na Commune ya  
Kalámu.
- Follow me to the Kalamu Commune.

## -B-

- komiséle (commissaire)
- commissioner, policeman
14. Té, Komiséle, mótsuka ezali  
ya ngái té.
- No, Officer, the car doesn't  
belong to me.
- lománde (n-) (amende)
- fine, penalty
15. Lománde ya bóni olingí  
náfúta?
- How much of a fine do you want  
me to pay?

## -A-

- pósí (poche)
- pocket, pouch, sack
16. Ozali na nkoto mókó sika  
óyo na pósí na yo?
- Do you have a thousand francs  
in your pocket right now?

## -B-

avásı (avance) advance, part payment,  
deposit

17. Té, nápésa avásı, bóongó  
nákende koluka ndámbo  
mosúsú na mbóka.
- No, let me give a deposit and  
then let me go home to get  
the rest.

## -A-

bolóko, ma- jail, prison  
makelelé quarrel, argument, sound  
of voices, noise

18. Mwána, sókó olíngí bolóko  
té, tíká makeléle mpe  
landá ngái. Esíli!
- Boy, if you don't want to go to  
jail, shut up and follow me.  
And that's final!

## -B-

19. Nayóki yó, Komiséle.
- I understand you, Officer.

## USEFUL PHRASES

Obúngí mibéko ya nzilá.	You've broken the traffic laws.
Obúngí matéya.	You don't know your lesson.
Obúngí nzilá ya mbóka.	You've lost your way home.
Obúngí nzilá ya kozónga na Leo.	You've lost the road to Leopold-ville.
Polísí abótóli paláki ya móтуka na yé.	The police confiscated his auto plates.
Polísí abótóli móтука na yé mpó azwi likámá na móтука.	The police confiscated his car because he had an accident.
Mopaya akangi móтука mpembéní na balabálá.	The stranger parked his car on the side of the street.

Mopaya akangí móтука na nsúka na balabálá.	The stranger parked his car at the corner of the street.
Mopaya akotísí móтука na kátí ya lopángó.	The stranger parked his car in the yard/driveway.
Komiséle apésí yé kovokasió mpó atámbwísí móтука mbángu makásí.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he was speeding
Komiséle apésí yé kovokasió mpó akangísí móтука esíká ya mabé.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he was parked illegally.
Komiséle apésí yé kovokasió mpó atútí motu ya nkinga.	The police officer gave him a ticket because he ran into a man on a bicycle.
-bunga	to forget; make a mistake, be wrong; lose, get lost, lose one's way; die
mobéko, mi-	law, regulation, obliga- tion, duty
litéya, ma-	lesson
polísí (police)	policeman, police
-bótolo	to take/snatch away, confiscate, impound, pillage
palákí (plaque)	plate, plaque, auto license plate
likámá, ma-	accident, danger; punishment
mopaya, ba-	stranger, guest, visitor, host

mpembéni, m-

side, edge; beside, along,  
next to, around, near

lopango, m-

enclosure; fence; plot  
of land, place of  
residence

kovokasió (convocation)

notice, summons, traffic  
ticket

nkinga, n-

bicycle

#### GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Atélemísí mó tuka mpembéni na ndáko. He parked the car beside the house.
2. Akangísí mó tuka mpembéni na ndáko. He stopped the car beside the house.
3. Akangísí mó tuka liboso ya mwinda motané. He stopped the car at the red light.
4. Mítuka minso mikangámi liboso ya mwinda motané. All the cars are stopped at the red light.
5. Mítuka minso mikangámi mpo mwinda motané epeli. All the cars are stopped because the light is red.
6. Mótuka monene etelémi mpó mwinda motané epeli. The big truck stopped because the light is red.
7. Mótuka monene etelémi nsima ya magazini. The big truck stopped behind the store.
8. Nzela ezali nsima ya magazini. There is a street behind the store.
9. Nzela ezali na batu mingi. There are many people on the street.

10. Mbóka na bíṣú ezalí na  
batu mingi.
- There are many people in our  
village.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Baníngá na ngái baákotámbóla My friends are in a hurry.  
mbángu.
2. Baníngá na ngái bafútéli My friends paid the fine for  
ngái lománde. me.
3. Mokonzi afútéli ngái The chief paid the fine for  
lománde. me.
4. Mokonzi amóní mwinda The chief didn't see the red  
motáné té. light.
5. Basáli bamóní mwinda The workers didn't see the  
motáné té. red light.
6. Basáli bakeí koluka mbóngó The workers have gone to get  
ya sánzá. their (monthly) pay.
7. Mokakísí akeí koluka mbóngó The teacher has gone to get  
ya sánzá. his salary.
8. Molakísí aákopelisa mabáyá. The teacher is burning the wood.
9. Bána aákopelisa mabáyá. The boys are burning wood.
10. Bána baákoyékola kotámbwisa The boys are learning to drive.  
mótuka.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Bolangítí ekúfi. The blanket is worn out.
2. Bolangítí epasúki. The blanket is torn up/worn out.
3. Sapáto epasúki. The shoes are torn up/worn out.
4. Sapáto ekómí ya kála. The shoes are old.

5. Pataló ekómí ya kála. The pants are old.
6. Pataló ezali motuya malamu. The pants are inexpensive.
7. Kazaka ezali motuya malamu. The jacket is cheap.
8. Kazaka euti na Bruxelles. The coat is from Brussels.
9. Libóké euti na Bruxelles. The package came from Brussels.
10. Libóké etindámaki na avio. The package was sent by air.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Kilió nini ozali na yangó. What pencil do you have?
2. Kilió ya náni ozali na yangó? Whose pencil do you have?
3. Kilió ya ndéngé nini ozali na yangó? What kind of pencil do you have?
4. Mótuka ya ndéngé nini ozali na yangó? What kind of car do you have?
5. Mótuka nini ozali na yangó? What make of car do you have?

Pattern Drill 1

1. Nabandí koyékola kotámbwisa mótsuka káká sika óyo. I've only just started to learn to drive.
2. Nabandí kosukola ndáko káká sika óyo. I've only just started to clean up the house.
3. Nabandí kopakola mokobo na mésa. I've only just started to paint the table.
4. Nabandí kobongisa masini ya mikanda káká sika óyo. I've only just started repairing the typewriter.
5. Nabandí kokitisa biloko na kamio káká sika óyo. I've only just started unloading the truck.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Komiséle abói kozwá mbongo. The policeman refused to accept the money.
2. Komiséle abótóli yé búuku ya mpáku. The policeman took away his ID card.
3. Bourgmestre ya Commune ya Kalamu abótóli yé búuku ya mpáku. The mayor of Kalamu Commune confiscated his ID card.
4. Bourgmestre ya Commune ya Kalamu abói makéléle. The mayor of Kalamu Commune doesn't like noise.
5. Mobangé óyo abói makéléle. The old man doesn't like noise.
6. Mobangé óyo afwándí áwa tíí na ntóngó. The old man has been sitting here since this morning.
7. Mopaya wána afwándí áwa tíí na ntóngó. That stranger has been sitting here since this morning.
8. Mopaya wána abúngí nzela ya mbóka na yé. That stranger can't remember the way back to his village.
9. Motu ya mabayá abúngí nzela ya mbóka na yé. The carpenter can't remember the way back to his village.
10. Motu ya mabayá abótóli ebételí na mwána. The carpenter took the hammer away from the child.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Atútáni na nzeté. He walked into a tree.
2. Mótuka etúti nzeté. The car crashed into a tree.
3. Mótuka etúti motu ya nkínga. The car hit a man on a bicycle.
4. Polisi akangi motu ya nkínga. The police arrested a man on a bicycle.

5. Polísí akangi sofele aleki  
mwinda motané. The police arrested the driver  
who ran the red light.
6. Tozali koluka sofélé aleki  
mwinda motané. We are looking for the driver  
who ran the red light.
7. Tozali koluka mobáli akangi  
lopango. We are looking for the man who  
fenced the plot of ground.
8. Mopaya ayébi mobáli akangi  
lopango. The visitor knows the man who  
is getting engaged.
9. Mopaya ayébi kopelisa  
mwinda. The stranger knows how to light  
the lamp.
10. Natuni mwasi apelisela  
ngái mwinda. I asked the woman to light the  
lamp for me.

Unit 18

## Basic Sentences

- A -

-tónga to build, construct

1. Nayóki te otóngísí ndáko I've heard that you've had a  
ya sika. new house built.

- B -

**sóolo** true, real, right; truth

2. Ee, ezali ya soolo. Yes, that's true.

-A-

briki (brique) brick

- tumba to burn, set fire, to roast over/in a fire

3. Ezali ya briki ya kotumba Is it made out of fired bricks  
too ya simeti? or cement?

- B -

4. Ezali ya briki ya  
ko tumbama. It's made of fired bricks.

- A -

**eténi**, *tí-* piece, part, share; room

5. Bozalí na bitení bóní ndáko? How many rooms do you have?

- B -

6. Biténi mitánu. Five rooms.

## -A-

-pono	to choose, select, elect
lángi	paint, color

7. Náni apóní lángi ya ndáko? Who chose the paint for your house?

## -B-

8. Mamá moto apónáki yangó. It was mother who chose it.  
 liso, lisu, <sup>o</sup>miso,  
<sup>o</sup>misu eye, (in pl.) with eyes open, with good vision/taste, unafraid
9. Oyébi té te bási bazalí na misu malámu? Don't you know that women have excellent taste?

## -A-

lokóla, (n-)	kind, sort; also, too; as, like, such as, similar, same sort
--------------	--

10. Olóngí, ezalí ya sópoló. You're right, it's true.
11. Na káti mpé ezalí lokóla na libánda? Is the interior also the same color as the outside?

## -B-

12. Ntína nini? For what reason/why should it be?
13. Na ndáko ya kolía, ezalí máí ya mpondú. In the dining room, it's green.  
 sokolá (chocolat) brown, dark red
14. Na ndáko ya kosolola, sokolá. In the living room, brown.
15. Na bandáko mosúsú, mwíndu, toó mpembé, toó máí ya malála. In the other rooms, gray, white, or orange.

-A-

16. Bozali bóni na libótá? How many are there in your family?
17. Náni mwána ya libosó, mwásí too móbalí? Who is the oldest child, a girl or a boy?

-B-

17. Tozali motóbá, mwána mwásí moto azali libosó. There are six of us (children).  
The oldest is a girl.

-A-

18. Bínu nyónso bokendéke kelásí, too bána misúsú batíkala mpó na kopésa mama mabóko? Do you all go to school or do some of the children stay home to give your mother a hand?

-B-

19. Misátu ya miké nainu bakómisi bangó na kelásí té. The three smallest haven't started to school yet.

-B-

- kúta to meet, find, come upon
20. Malámu, nakeí nainu kolía, tokokútana nsíma. Good, I'm going to eat now, we'll see each other later.
21. Kende malámu. Goodby.

#### USEFUL PHRASES

- Eténi ya kobómbo bílambá ezali motánéso. The closet is (painted) yellow.
- Eténi ya kobómbo bílóko ezali motánéso. The storage room is tan.

Eténi ya kobómba bíléí ezalí bulé.	The pantry is blue.
Kómbá ndáko.	Sweep the floor.
Sukóla ndáko.	Mop the floor.
Púpolá putulú likoló ya mesá na kítí.	Dust off the furniture.
Kulútú na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My older brother is reading the paper.
Léki na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My younger brother is reading the paper.
Bokiló na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My father-in-law is reading the paper.
Kóko na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My grandfather is reading the paper.
Mbanda na ngái aákotánga zulunálo.	My co-wife is reading the paper.
Bísú na yé tokómí mbanda.	We no longer like each other. (lit.) We have become in-laws.
Akeí ndóbo.	He has gone fishing.
Akeí bokila.	He has gone hunting.
Aákokálínga makeí na kúku.	She's frying eggs in the kitchen.
Aákotökisa makeí na kúku.	She's boiling eggs in the kitchen.
Aákoumba nyama.	She's roasting meat over the fire.
-bómba	to hide, keep, store, pre-serve, shelter; observe, obey (law, custom)
motánéso	light yellow/tan/beige
bule (bleu)	blue
-kóombo, -kómba	to sweep, clean house, empty

-pupa	to blow, fan, winnow, make clean by blowing/shaking
kulútú, ba-	older brother/sister
-tángá	to read, count, enumerate, add up
zulunáló (journal)	newspaper, magazine
léki, ba-	younger brother/sister
bokiló, <sup>o</sup> bakiló	parent-in-law, brother/sister-in-law, good friend, acquaintance
kóko, ba-	grandparents, grandchild
mbanda, ba-	co-wife; brother-in-law married to wife's sister, sister-in-law married to husband's brother; people who don't like each other
ndóbó, n-	fishing, fishhook
bokila, ma-	hunt(ing)
-kálíngá, kálanga	to fry, bake, roast
likeí, ma-	egg
kúku	kitchen
-tókó	to boil, be boiling

## NOTES

18.1 /-zala ya/

Ezalí ya sóoló.

Ezalí ya briki ya kotúmba too ya siméti?

/-zala ya/ means 'to consist of', 'be made out of', as in

the sentence above: 'It is true', literally 'It consists of the truth'; 'Is it made out of fired bricks or cement?

### 18.2 Equational Sentence with Emphatic Subject

Mamá moto aponákí yangó.

Equational sentences (See Note 6.1) whose second element begin with /moto/ or /bato/ are used to give special emphasis to the subject. In this type of sentence, /moto/ often translates, 'the one who', 'the person who', as in the sentence above, 'Mother (is) the one who chose it.' /aponákí yangó/ is an adjective relative clause (See Note 5.10) in this sentence.

#### GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Libótá ezalí na eténi ya kolia. The family is in the dining room.
2. Libótá ezalí na eténi ya kolámba bilóko. The family is in the kitchen.
3. Bakulútú na yó ya mibálí bazalí na eténi ya kolámba bilóko. Your older brothers are in the kitchen.
4. Bakulútú na yó ya mibálí bazalí na biténi ya kolála. Your brothers are in their bedroom.
5. Baleki na ngái bazalí na biténi ya kolála. My younger brothers and sisters are in their bedrooms.
6. Baleki na ngái bazalí kotumba briki. My younger brothers are firing bricks.
7. Batu bazalí kotumba briki. The men are firing bricks.

8. Batu batóngáki ndáko na  
briki ya kotumba.
9. Ndáko etóngámáká na briki  
ya kotumba.
10. Ndáko etóngámáká na mabángá  
ná mabayá.
- The men built the house of  
fired brick.
- The house was built out of  
fired brick.
- The house was built out of  
stone and wood.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Mwána amónánáká libosó  
ya ndáko.
2. Mótuka emónánáká libosó  
ya ndáko.
3. Mótuka ebongísámáká na  
mécanicien.
4. Avío ebongísámáká na  
mecanicien.
5. Avío eyókámáká na bána.
6. Basáleli bayókámáká na  
bána.
7. Basáleli batúnámáká na  
mokonzi.
8. Basáli batúnámáká na  
mokonzi.
9. Basáli bazalí kotúnama  
na gendarme.
10. Mwásí azali kotúnama na  
gendarme.
- The boy was seen in front of  
the house.
- The car was seen in front of  
the house.
- The truck was repaired by  
the mechanic.
- The plane was repaired by  
the mechanic.
- The airplane was heard by  
the children.
- The servants were heard by  
the children.
- The servants were questioned  
by the chief.
- The workers were questioned  
by the chief.
- The workers are being questioned  
by the policeman.
- The woman is being questioned  
by the police.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Olongí, ndáko na bangó ezali ya briki motáné. You're right, their house is built out of red bricks.
2. Olongí na likambo olobí. You're correct in what you said.
3. Násala nini na likambo olobí? What should I do about the thing you just mentioned?
4. Násala nini mpoo náyeba koloba Lingala? How should I go about learning Lingala?
5. Lakísá ngái mayélé mpoo náyeba koloba Lingala. Show me a good system for learning Lingala.
6. Lakísá ngái mayélé ya kolámba mpondu. Show me how to cook manioc leaves.
7. Tokotúna nsíma ya kolámba mpondu. We'll discuss it after fixing the manioc leaves.
8. Tokotúna nsíma ya ndóbo. We'll discuss it after fishing.
9. Nakangákí mbisi míngi na ndóbo. I caught a lot of fish with a hook and line.
10. Nakangákí mbisi míngi na ebale. I caught a lot of fish in the river.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Bókende kopésa mamá mabóko. Go give mother a hand.
2. Bókende kopésa tata nkíngá ákende mosálá. Go give your father the bicycle so he can go to work.
3. Bongiséla tata nkíngá ákende mosálá. Fix the bicycle for your father so he can go to work.
4. Bongiséla yé lokolo ya sapátu. Repair the shoes for him.

5. Babúngisélí yé lokolo ya sapátu. His shoes were lost.
6. Babúngisélí mwána ndembó. Somebody lost the child's ball.
7. Tata ya Polo aákokénde kosómbela mwána ndembó. Paul's father is going to buy the child a ball.
8. Tata ya Polo aákokénde kosómbela ngái makeí ya nsósó na zándu. Paul's father is going to the market to buy me some eggs.
9. Mbanda aákokénde kosómbela ngái makeí ya nsósó na zándu. My co-wife has gone to the market to buy me some eggs.
10. Mbanda atumbí nyama na kúku. My co-wife roasted the meat in the kitchen.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Nakótísí mótsuka na ndáko na yangó. I put the car in the garage/ carport.
2. Nakótísí mótsuka na káti ya lopango. I parked the car in the yard/ driveway.
3. Bána baákosakana na káti ya lopango. The children are playing in the yard.
4. Bána baákosakana na libánda ya Stade Baudouin. The boys are going to play at Stade Baudouin.
5. Lisano eékosálama na libánda ya Stade Baudouin. The game is going to be played at Stade Baudouin.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Nazalaka na ndáko ya nsúka. I live in the last house.
2. Nazalaka na ndáko ya libosó. I live in the first house.
3. Nazalaka na ndáko wáná ya mpémbe ya libosó. I live in the first white house.
4. Nazalaka na ndáko wáná na loboko ya mwásí. I live in the house on the left.
5. Nazalaka na ndáko wáná na loboko ya mobálí. I live in the house on the right.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Etéyelo ezalí ya bríki ya kotumba. The school is made of fired bricks.
2. Etéyelo etóngámáki ntángu ya elanga. The school was built during the dry season.
3. Ndáko ya kolála etóngámáki ntángu ya elanga. The bedroom was built during the dry season.
4. Ndáko ya kolála ezalí mái ya mpondú. The bedroom is green.
5. Efándeli ya kelásí ezalí mái ya mpondú. The desks are green.
6. Efándeli ya kelásí ezalí sokolá. The desks are brown.
7. Eténi ya kobómba bíléi ezalí sokolá. The pantry is painted brown.

8. Eténi ya kobómba biliéi                   The pantry has been swept.  
ekombámáki.
9. Ndáko nyónso ya kolála                   All the bedrooms had been  
bikómbámáki.                                   swept.
10. Ndáko nyónso ya kolála                   All the bedrooms were mopped  
bisukwámáki na bakulútú  
na ngái ya basí.                           by my older sisters.

## Unit 19

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Mónika! Monique!

-B-

2. Mama! Yes, Mother.

-A-

3. Wápi yo? Where are you?

-B-

4. Nazalí komísukola nzótu. I'm taking a bath.

-A-

nóki fast, quick, prompt

5. Sálá nóki ósómbela ngái Hurry up and go get me some  
bilóko na zándu. things at the market.

-B-

-zoka to be injured, to be  
touched

mosai, monsai, finger, toe

mosapi, mi-

6. Tínda María, namízokísáki Send Marie, I hurt my fingers  
lóbí na minsai. yesterday.

-A-

7. Omízokísáki na níni? What did you hurt yourself with?

-B-

8. Na mbéli ya mésa. With a table knife.

-A-

9. Wápi epái? Where were you?

-B-

'ville' city, town, downtown

10. Lóbí na ndáko ya moníngá Yesterday at one of my friend's  
na ngái mókó na ville. house in town.

-A-

11. Boongó, oókozila níni mpó Well, why are you waiting to  
ókende na munganga? go to the doctor's?

-B-

12. Nakokende nsíma sókó I'll go later when I've finished  
nasilisi komisukola. taking my bath.

-A-

kítunga, litunga, ma- a basket with a lid

13. María, kamátá kítunga Marie, take the market basket  
ósombela ngái bilókó and go buy me some things  
na zándu. at the market.

-B-

lipúta, ma- pagne, long wrap-around  
skirt

litambála, kitambála, handkerchief, towel, cloth,  
ma- napkin

14. Mama, nakomísómbela mpé  
lipúta ná lítambála  
namónákí.
- I'll also buy myself the pagne  
and headscarf that I saw.

## USEFUL PHRASES

- Motu ya kabinda aákokáta  
monkolótó na kiliyó.
- The carpenter is drawing a  
line with a pencil.
- Motu ya kabinda azéngí ndámbo  
ya libáyá.
- The cabinetmaker cut off a  
piece of the wood.
- Motu ya kabinda akobólí libáyá  
na bitení.
- The carpenter cut the piece of  
wood in half.
- Mópe akangi gbagba foto.
- The priest took a picture of  
the bridge.
- Mópe akangi bwátu foto.
- The priest took a picture of  
the dugout canoe.
- Mópe akangi mokili foto na  
masúwa.
- The priest took a picture of  
the mainland from the boat.
- Mópe azali kolúka bwátu.
- The priest is rowing the boat.
- Mópe azali kolúka nkái.
- The priest is rowing.
- Mamá mokéngeli aákopusa mwána  
moké na púsupusu.
- The governess is pushing the  
baby in the stroller.
- Mamá mokéngeli aákomélisa  
mwána moké milíki.
- The babysitter is feeding the  
baby milk.
- Mamá mobókoli aákolátisa  
mwána moké bílamba.
- The governess is dressing the  
baby.
- Mamá mobókoli aákolakisa  
mwána kokáta mái.
- The babysitter is teaching the  
child to swim.
- Abóngoli Angelé na Lingála.
- He translated it from English  
into Lingála.

Abóngóli káwa na sukálí.	He stirred sugar into his coffee.
Abóngóli kítí.	He turned the chair around.
Akweí na kítí.	He turned over in the chair.
	He fell out of the chair.
Akweísí kítí na mabelé.	He turned the chair over.
kabínda, ba-	carpenter, cabinet-maker
-káta	to cut, chop
monkolótó, mi-	line
-zénga	to cut off, chop off
mópe, mómpé, ba- (mon père)	priest (Catholic)
gbagba	bridge
foto (photo)	photograph, picture
bwátu, °mátu	dugout canoe, native boat
mokíli, mi-	mainland, land, interior, inland, world
-luka	to row/paddle a boat
nkái, n-	paddle, oar
-pusa (pousser?)	to push, shove
púsupúsu (pousse-pousse)	pushcart, baby carriage, stroller
milíki	milk
-bókolo	to bring up, raise, rear, feed, breed (animal)
Angélé (anglais)	English
káwa	coffee
-kwéya	to fall; be involved in/lose a lawsuit

## NOTES

## 19.1 Reflexive

Nazalí komísukola nzótú.

The reflexive prefix /-mí/ means 'to do something to/for oneself'. /-mí/ is prefixed to the base and occurs with all persons, e.g., /Nazalí komísukola nzotu/, 'I'm taking a bath', literally, 'I'm washing myself the body'.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Namísukolaka nzótú na<br>ntóngó nyónso.                  | I take a bath every morning.                                 |
| 2. Namísukolaka nzótú na<br><u>mpókwa nyónso.</u>           | I take a bath every evening.                                 |
| 3. Amísómbelaka nyama na<br>mpókwa nyónso.                  | He buys some meat for himself<br>every evening.              |
| 4. Amísómbelaka nyama <u>epái</u><br><u>ya batékinyama.</u> | He buys meat for himself at<br>the butcher's (meatsellers'). |
| 5. Amízokísí epái ya batékí-<br>nyama.                      | He injured himself at the<br>butcher's.                      |
| 6. Amízokísí <u>na mbéli</u> ya<br><u>mésa.</u>             | He injured himself with a<br>table knife.                    |
| 7. Amísáléli <u>ekéko</u> na mbéli<br>ya mésa.              | He made himself a statue with<br>the knife.                  |
| 8. Amísáléli <u>ndáko</u> ya <u>mabáyá.</u>                 | He built himself a frame house.                              |
| 9. Tokomísómbela <u>ndáko</u> ya<br><u>mabáyá.</u>          | We are going to buy ourselves<br>a frame house.              |
| 10. Tokomísómbela <u>bilambá</u> ya<br><u>síka.</u>         | We are going to buy ourselves<br>some new clothes.           |

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ndáko ya bísu ezali  
mpembéni na nzela.  
Our house is near the road.
2. Tomóni bána bakelásı  
mpembéni na nzela.  
We saw some school children  
near the road.
3. Tomóni bána bakelásı na  
motéi na bangó.  
We saw some school children  
with their teacher.
4. Bayékolı bakendékı na ville  
na motéi na bangó.  
The students have gone into  
town with their teacher.
5. Bayékolı bakendékı na ville  
komísombela sapátu.  
The students have gone into  
town to buy themselves some  
shoes.
6. Kulútu na ngái azalí kozila  
mpó ámisombela sapátu.  
My brother is waiting to buy  
some shoes.
7. Kulútu na ngái azalí kozila  
ngái na nzela.  
My brother is waiting for me  
out on the street.
8. Atíki ngái na nzela.  
He let me out at the road.
9. Atíki bilambá na ndáko.  
He left the clothes at the  
house.
10. Atindéli ngái bilambá na  
ndáko.  
She sent me the clothes at  
the house.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Nazalí komítuna sókó mbúla  
ezali konoko.  
I wonder if it's raining.
2. Nazalí komítuna sókó akoyáa.  
I wonder if she's coming.
3. Nazalí komítuna mpó na nini  
ayákí lóbí.  
I wonder why he came yesterday.

4. Nazalí komítúna epái azali. I wonder where he is.
5. Nazalí komítúna sókó azali  
náni. I wonder who he is.
6. Nazalí komítúna epái natíki  
mafungóla. I wonder where I put my keys.
7. Nazalí komítúna ndéngé níni  
akomí áwa. I wonder how he got here.
8. Nazalí komítúna ntángu níni  
akozónغا. I wonder when he'll get back.
9. Nazalí komítúna sókó ayébi  
epái tozali. I wonder if he knows where we are.
10. Nazalí komítúna sókó azwi  
mokanda. I wonder if he received the letter.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Mópe amisómbéli masíni  
ya foto. The priest bought himself a camera.
2. Mópe abóngoli mokanda ya  
Angelé na Falanse. The priest translated the letter from English to French.
3. Moyékwísi abóngoli mokanda  
ya Angelé na Falanse. The instructor translated the letter from English into French.
4. Moyékwísi akwéi na kití. The instructor turned over in his chair.
5. Mofúteli akwéi na kití. The tenant turned over in his chair.
6. Mofúteli apési ngái mbongo  
ya ndáko. The tenant paid me the rent.

7. Kabinda apésí ngái mbóngó ya ndáko. The carpenter paid me the rent.
8. Kabínda abóngólákí ebómbeli ya búuku. The carpenter turned the bookcase around.
9. Bói apúpolí kátí ya ebómbeli ya búuku. The houseboy dusted the inside of the bookcase.
10. Bói apúpolí likoló ya ebómbeli ya basáni. The houseboy dusted the outside of the china cabinet.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Abóngolí káwa na sukálí. He stirred sugar into his coffee.
2. Mónika abóngolí káwa na sukálí. Monique stirred sugar into her coffee.
3. Mónika alingí litambála na líputá. Monique wants a pagne and kerchief.
4. Léki na yé aákosóm̄ba mpé litambála na líputá. Her younger sister is also going to buy a pagne and kerchief.
5. Léki na yé aákosomba mpé mbeli ya kúku. Her younger sister is also going to buy a butcher knife.
6. Namikati monsai na mbeli ya kúku. I cut my finger with a butcher knife.
7. Namikati monsai na monoko ya ndáko. I cut my finger on the door.
8. Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya mpondú na monoko ya ndáko. We will paint the door again.
9. Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya mpondú na bilambá ya sika. We are going to dye the new dress green.
10. Tokotíya mokóbo ya mái ya malála na bilambá ya sika. We are going to dye the new dresses orange.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Mamá mokéngeli aákopúsa mwána moké na púsupúsu. The babysitter is pushing the baby in the buggy.
2. Kóko mwásí aákopúsa mwána moké na púsupúsu. The grandmother is pushing the baby in the buggy.
3. Kóko mwásí aákolátisa mwána moké bilambá. The grandmother is dressing the baby.
4. Tatá mwásí aákolatisa mwána moké bilambá. The (baby's) aunt is dressing the baby.
5. Tatá mwásí aákoleísa mwána moké. The (baby's) aunt is feeding the baby.
6. Kulútú mwásí aákoleísa mwána moké. The (baby's) older sister is feeding the baby.
7. Kulútú mwásí akangí mwána moké foto. The (baby's) older sister took a picture of the baby.
8. Mope akangí mwána moké foto. The priest took the baby's picture.
9. Mope azaláki kotánga zulunálo ya leló. The priest was reading today's paper.
10. Kabinda atóngi ndáko ya bísu azaláki kotánga zulunálo ya leló. The carpenter who built our house was reading today's paper.

## 19.2 Compound Agent Nouns

Amísómbelaka epái ya batékinyama.

/batékinyama/ is a compound agent noun, meaning 'meatsellers'. The agentive element is first and the qualifying noun second, e.g., /batékinyama/ is literally 'sellersmeat', and /molukinyama/, 'hunter' is literally 'searcheranimal'. Both nouns in this type of compound have their class prefixes, singular and plural, as the case

may be. Such a compound noun is written as a single word in this manual, but regular orthography writes two words.

### 19.3 Kinship Terminology.

Tatá mwásí aákoleísa mwána moké.

The system of classifying relatives used by speakers of Lingala is quite different from that used by speakers of English. Consequently, translation of kinship terms can only be approximated. In the example above, 'The (baby's) aunt is feeding the baby', /tatá mwásí/ corresponds only partially to 'aunt'. It means 'father's sister' and certain other female relatives of one's father, e.g., 'paternal grandfather's brother's daughter'.

One's mother's sister is /mama'/ i.e., 'mother', likewise /tatá/ is also 'father's brother.' There is a special term for 'maternal uncle', /nóko/, (Cf. Dialogue 6.)

There is not sufficient space in this manual for a detailed discussion of social organization and kinship terminology. Interested students can read a standard anthropological work, such as Murdock, G.P., Social Structure, Macmillan, New York, 1949.

## Unit 20

## Basic Sentences

**-A-**

'ambassade'

embassy

1. Áwa Ambassade ya AmérIQUE? Is this the American Embassy?

**-B-**

2. Yangó mpenzá. Oókoluka  
nini? Indeed it is. What do you want?

**-A-**

viza (visa)

visa

mobémbo, mi-

journey, trip

3. Nayéí mpó na visa. Nalingí  
nákende mobémbo na AmérIQUE. I've come for a visa. I want to make a trip to America.

**-B-**

4. Okénde kosála nini kúná? What do you intend to do there?

**-A-**

5. Nakeí koyékola. I'm leaving to go to school.

**-B-**

6. Osílí omíkomísí nkómbo na  
université óyo okokende? Have you already been admitted to the university to which you are going?

**-A-**

7. Ée, na Université ya California. Yes, at the University of California.

-B-

8. Elōko nini okoyékola? What are you going to study?

-A-

9. Sciences économiques. Economics.

-B-

10. Mbúla bóni okoumela kúná? How many years are you going to stay?

-A-

11. Minei too mitánu. Four or five.

-B-

12. Náni akofutela yo kelásí, babótí? Who will pay for your schooling, your parents?

-A-

'bourse d'études' scholarship

13. Nazwáki bourse d'études na gouvernement américain. I have received a scholarship from the American Government.

-B-

-tóndo

to wish, hope, thank

mobémbo, mi-

trip, journey, voyage

ó

toward, to; at, in, on, by

14. Malámu, naákotoondo yo mobémbo malámu ó Amérique, mpé oyékolaka makásí. Fine, I hope you have a good trip to America, and study hard.

-B-

15. Melesí, ótikala malámu, sókó tokomónana lisúsu te. Thanks, and goodby, in case we don't see each other again.

## USEFUL PHRASES

- Moyángeli ya báñki atóndísí ngái físi. The bank manager had me fill out some forms.
- Moyángeli ya báñki atóndíséli ngái físi. The bank manager filled out some forms for me.
- Moyángeli ya báñki apésí ngái físi mpó nátóndisa. The bank manager gave me some forms to fill out.
- Ífo názwa mbóngó na báñki. I have to withdraw some money from the bank.
- Ífo názwela mwána na ngái ya mobálí mbwá. I have to get my son a dog.
- Ífo názwela mwána na ngái ya mwásí nkondokó. I have to get my daughter a cat.
- Tolobákilóbákí butú mobimba. We chatted all night.
- Totámbólítambólí butú mobimba. We walked all night.
- Tobétibéti makolo butú mobimba. We walked all night.
- Tokatí nzeté ndámbondámbo. We cut the log up into pieces.
- Tokatí nzeté biténibiténí. We cut the log up into pieces.
- Nakanáki nákende. I wish I could go.
- Nakanísáki mbúla eékokatana konóko. I wish it would stop raining.
- Nakanáki kosóm̩ba mó̩tuka na sánzá eleki. I wish I could have bought a car last month.
- Naákokana kosóm̩ba mó̩tuka na sánzá ekoyáa. I wish I could buy a car next month.
- Naákokana násóm̩ba mó̩tuka na sánza óyo. I wish I could buy a car this month.

---

-yángela	to manage, administrate, arrange
bánki (banque)	bank
físi (fiche)	form, blank
ífo (il faut)	it is necessary to, one has to has to
mbwá, m-	dog
nkóndokó, n-	cat

## NOTES

## 20.1 /ífo/ plus Subjunctive

ífo názwa mbóngó na bánki.

/ífo/, French, 'il faut', 'it's necessary to', 'one has to', followed a Lingala subjunctive occurs very frequently, as in the sentence above, 'I have to withdraw money from the bank'. /ebongí/ and /ífo/ may be freely substituted for one another in this type of construction.

## 20.2 Reduplication for Intensity

Tolobákílóbákí butú míngi.

The base of a stem may be reduplicated or doubled for intensity, e.g., /tolobákílóbákí/ 'we chatted', 'we talked and talked'. In a reduplicated stem, only the tone of the first syllable of the first base is fixed. Other syllables have tones as described in Note 2.2.

## 20.3 Wishes, Intentions, Plans

Nakanákí nákénde

Wishes, intentions, and plans are expressed by /-kána/ or

/-kánisa/, e.g., the sentence above translates, 'I have decided to go', 'I wish I could go', 'I intend to go', 'I believe I will go'.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Oyébi motu moko na Amérique? Do you know anyone in America?
2. Oyébi Ambassade ya Amérique? Do you know where the American Embassy is?
3. Áwa Ambassade ya Amérique? Is this the American Embassy?
4. Áwa esiká ya kobwaka mikanda? Is this the post office?
5. Azali esiká ya kobwaka mikanda? Has he gone to the post office?
6. Azali kobongisa biloko mpó na mobembo. He is packing his things for a trip.
7. Bamosusu bazali kobongisa biloko mpó na mobembo. The others are packing their bags.
8. Bamosusu bazali mpembeni ya mesa. The others are (sitting) at the table.
9. Monganga azali mpembeni ya mesa. The doctor is (standing) by the table.
10. Monganga azali kosálisa motu amizokisáki. The doctor is taking care of the man who hurt himself.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nasilisi mosala na ngái. I've just finished my work.
2. Nasili kosala mosala na ngái. I've already finished my work.
3. Nakei kosala mosala na ngái. I'm (just) leaving for work.
4. Nakei kosilisa mosala na ngái. I'm getting back to work. I'm going to continue working.
5. Nazali kosilisa mosala na ngái. I'm about to finish my work.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Naákoleka mpembéni na ndáko. I'm going by (near) the house.
2. Naákoleka na katikátí na ndáko. I'm going through the house.
3. Naákobima na ndáko. I'm coming out of the house.
4. Naákotika ndáko. I'm going away from the house.
5. Naákotika na ndáko. I'm leaving it in the house.
6. Nakeí na ndáko. I'm entering the house. I'm going home.
7. Nakeí ó ndáko. I'm going to(ward) the house.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Azali ó esíka ya kobwáka mikanda. He is at the post office.
2. Akendéki ó esíka ya kobwáka mikanda. He went to the post office.
3. Akendéki ó zándo. He went to the market.
4. Nazali kokende ó zándo. I'm on my way to the market.
5. Nazali kokende ó Amérique. I'm going to America.
6. Nakeí na Amérique. I'm leaving for America.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Babéngáká yé Pólo. They named him Paul. His name is Paul.
2. Babéngí yé Pólo. They called him Paul (by mistake).
3. Babéngí biloko na Mpútú. They ordered some things from Europe.

4. Babéngí ngái na telefón They phoned me from Europe.  
na Mpútú.
5. Atelefónáki ngái na Mpútú. He phoned me from Europe.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Tolobákilóbáki míngi. We chatted a long time.
2. Batámbólítámbólí míngi. They walked a very long way.
3. Batámbólítámbólí mokolo They walked the whole day.  
mobimba.
4. Motu asáláki mokolo mobimba. The man worked all day.
5. Motu asálaka mikolo nyónso. The man worked every day.
6. Motu asálaka bifándeli ya The man makes wooden chairs.  
mabáya.
7. Mwásí amísombéli bifándeli The woman bought herself some  
ya mabáya. wooden chairs.
8. Mwásí amísombéli sapáto ya The woman bought herself some  
síka. new shoes.
9. Apésí bangó sapáto ya síka. She gave them new shoes.
10. Apésí bangó matambála ya She gave them some old head-  
kala. scarfs.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Ebongí nákende na avío. I have to go by plane.
2. Ifo nákende na avío. I have to go by plane.
3. Ifo nákende kokamata mwásí I have to go get my wife who'll  
akoyaa na avío. be arriving by plane.
4. Ebongí nákende kokamata I have to go get my wife who'll  
mwásí akoyaa na avío. be arriving by plane.

5. Ebongí lóbí na ntóngó  
álongwa na mpóngí na  
ntángu malámu. He has to get up early tomorrow morning.
6. Ífo lóbí na ntóngó álongwa  
na mpóngí ntángu malámu. He has to get up early tomorrow morning.
7. Ífo bátónđisa físi libosó  
ya kokénde. They had to fill out some forms before leaving.
8. Ebongí bátónđisa físi  
libosó ya kokénde. They had to fill out some forms before leaving.
9. Ebongí tóbóngola lelo  
mabele ó lisálá. We have to plow the field today.
10. Ífo tóbóngola lelo mabele  
ó lisálá. We have to plow the field today.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 7

1. Nakanísákí mbúla eékoka tana  
konóko. I wish it would stop raining.
2. Nakanísákí nakokákí kosóm̄ba  
mótuka ya sika. I wish I could buy a new car.
3. Nakanákí násóm̄ba mótsuka  
ya sika. I wish I could buy a new car.
4. Nakanákí nákende. I wish I could go.
5. Nakanákí kosóm̄ba mótsuka  
na sánzá eleki. I wish I could have bought a car last month.
6. Naákokana kosóm̄ba mótsuka  
na sánzá ekoyáa. I wish I could buy a car next month.
7. Nakanísí akosóm̄ba mótsuka  
na sánzá ekoyáa. I think he will buy a car next month.

8. Nakanísi akoyaa na sánzá  
ekoyaa. I believe he's coming next month.
9. Nakanísáki akoyaa na sánzá  
eleki. I thought he was coming last month.
10. Nakanísáki akoyaa ntángu  
tozaláká na Boma. I wish he had come when we lived at Boma.

## Unit 21

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Ekomeli na ngái ebúngí. My pencil is lost. Have you  
 Omóní yangó té? seen it?

-B-

2. Té, otíyí yangó epái No, where did you put it?  
 wápi?

-A-

3. Natíkákí yangó likolo I put it on the table, but it  
 ya mésa, kásí sika isn't there now.  
 áwa ezali té.

-B-

4. Omóní na nsé ya mésa? Did you look under the table?  
 Ntángu mosúsú ekwéí Maybe it fell off.  
 na nsé.

-A-

5. Óo, yangó wáná. Elálí Oh, there it is. It's lying  
 na nsé ya mésa kásí under the table next to the  
 mpembéni ya ndáko. wall.

-B-

- gumba to fold, bend, stoop  
 -lokoto to pick up, gather, collect

6. Gumbáma na nsé ólokoto yangó. Oókozila nání? Stoop down and pick it up. Who are you waiting for?

-A-

7. Ekwéí mosíka nákoma té. It's fallen way back.

8. Yáká tópúsa mésa mpembéní. Come, let's move the table sideways.

-B-

-bénda to draw/pull/move in/  
out/up/off/over

9. Kéndé kolokoto nzeté na libánda óbenda ya (y)angó. Nalembí míngi. Go get a stick outside to rake it out with. I'm very tired.

-A-

10. Sókó nanyakóli ndáko na nzeté, etálí yo ee. If I scratch the wall with the stick, it's your responsibility.

-B-

nkóo, nkó, n- intent, malice, purpose,  
will

11. Boóngó oókosála na nkó? Well, are you going to do it on purpose?

boye thus, so

12. Sókó boyé, tíká yangó epolo wáná. If that's the case, let it rot there.

-A-

13. Ndéngé níní nátíka? Why should I get it?

14. Sóki boye, defísá ngái  
ekomeli na yó mókó,  
násala misálá na ngái.

If that's the case, lend me  
one of your pencils so I  
can do my homework.

-B-

15. Kamátá!

Take one!

#### USEFUL PHRASES

Ezalí na efelo.

It's on the wall.

Ezalí penepéné ya efelo.

It's near the wall.

Ezalí katikátí ya efelo.

It's inside the wall.

Akatísí zámba.

He went through the forest.

Atámbólí na zámba.

He took a walk outside. He's  
gone hunting.

Akeí na zámba.

He went into the interior.

He's gone hunting.

Béndá mpéma.

Inhale.

Bímísá mpéma.

Exhale.

Tombálá rádio ótia mpembení.

Pick up the radio and put  
it over there.

Fungólá rádio.

Turn the radio on.

Kangá rádio.

Turn the radio off.

Kangá masíni ya kokaukisa  
bilambá.

Turn the clothes drier off.

Fungólá masíni ya kokaukisa  
bilambá.

Turn the clothes drier on.

Pelísá mwinda.

Light the lamp. Turn the  
light(s) on.

Bomá mwinda.	Extinguish the lamp. Turn the light(s) off.
Tiyá prise ya frígó.	Connect the refrigerator.
Tiyá móto na litúká.	Turn the stove on.
Tiyá prise.	Connect the plug.
Longólá prise.	Disconnect the plug.
Béndá prise.	Disconnect the plug.
Béndá prise ya frígó.	Disconnect the refrigerator.
Bomá litúká.	Turn the stove off.
efelo, bi-	wall
penepe	near, close, by, against
katíkati	in between, in the middle/center of
zámba	woods, forest, jungle; interior, outside, country
mpéma, m-	breath
-tóbala	to pick up, lift, carry
rádio, radió	radio
-kauka, -kaoka	to be(come) dry
frígó (frigo)	refrigerator
litúká, ma-	three stones used to cook on, cook stove
'prise'	plug (electrical)

### 21.1 Double Spatial Relationships

Elálí na nsé ya mésa kásí mpembéní ya ndáko.

When specifying the location of objects in relation to two other objects, (1) a particle such as /kásí/, 'but', or (2) a

pause, /,/, occurs between the two reference locations, or (3) one reference location is in a subordinate clause, e.g., (1) /Eláli na nsé ya mésa kásí mpembéní ya ndáko/, 'It's lying under the table (but) next to the wall.', (2) /Eláli na nsé ya mésa, mpembéní ya ndáko/, 'It's lying under the table (,) next to the wall'. or (3) /Bizalákí likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa. /, 'They were on the book (which is) on the table.'

## 21.2 Partitive

mókó na kátí na bínú.

míbalé na kátí na bangó

/...na kátí na/ya.../ is a partitive construction, i.e., it refers to some or part of a group or whole, e.g., /mókó na kátí na bínú/, 'one of you', /míbalé na kátí na bangó/, 'two of them'.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Ekomeli na ngái ebungí. My pencil is lost.
2. Mwána ya mobálí abungí. The boy is lost.
3. Mwána ya mobálí akwéí.  
na mbétu. The boy fell off the bed.
4. Ekomeli ya máí ya mokanda  
ekwéí na mbétu. The pen fell off the bed.
5. Ekomeli ya máí ya mokanda  
ekwéí na nsé ya mésa. The pen fell under the table.
6. Mokanda ekwéí na nsé ya  
mésa. The letter fell under the table.
7. Mokanda eútí na tata. The letter is from my father.
8. Mbóngó eútí na tata. The money is from my father.
9. Mbóngó ekoki té. There isn't enough money.
10. Máí ekoki té. There isn't enough water.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ezalí na nsé ya kítí kásí mpembéni ya ndáko. It's under the chair next to the wall.
2. Ezalí na nsé kásí na kátí ya mésa mibaleé. It's on the floor between the two desks.
3. Bizalákí na nsé kásí na kátí ya mésa mibaleé. They were on the floor between the two tables.
4. Bizalákí likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa. They were on the book on the table.
5. Natiyáki yangó likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa. I put them on the book on the table.
6. Natiyáki yangó na kátí ya búuku óyo ezalákí penepene ya telefón. I put them in the book by the telephone.
7. Nazwákí yangó na kátí ya búuku óyo ezalákí penepene ya telefón. I found it in a book by the telephone.
8. Nazwákí yangó epái otíkáki. I found it when you left it.
9. Ezali nainu epái otíkáki. It's still where you left it.
10. Ezali nainu likoló ya mésa na etení ya kolía. It's still in the dining room on the table.

Pattern Drill 1

1. Ekomeli elálí na nsé ya mésa. The pencil is under the table.
2. Ekomeli elálí na likoló ya mésa. The pencil is on the table.
3. Ekomeli elálí na nsíma ya mésa. The pencil is behind the table.

4. Ekomeli eláli na libosó  
ya mésa.  
The pencil is in front of the  
table.
5. Ekomeli eláli na mpembéni  
ya mésa.  
The pencil is lying near the  
table.
6. Ekomeli eláli na nsúka ya  
mésa.  
The pencil is lying at the edge  
of the table.
7. Ekomeli eláli penepene na  
mésa.  
The pencil is lying (right) by  
the table.
8. Ekoméli eláli mosíka na  
mésa.  
The pencil is a long way from  
the table.
9. Ekoméli eláléli mésa.  
The pencil is leaning against  
the table.
10. Ekomeli ezali na kátí ya  
mésa.  
The pencil is in the table.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Balokótí nzeté na libánda  
mpó na kobénda ekomeli.  
They picked up a stick outside  
to rake the pencil out with.
2. Kamátá nzeté na libánda  
mpó na kobénda ekomeli.  
Get a stick outside to rake the  
pencil out with.
3. Kamátá ekomeli na ngái  
mókó ósála na yangó.  
Take one of my pencils to do  
your work with.  
(Take pencil of me one, you work  
with it.)
4. Zwá ekomeli na ngái mókó  
ósála na yangó.  
Take one of my pencils to do  
your homework with.
5. Zwá óyo nalobi na yo.  
Take what I told you.
6. Bósála óyo nalobi na binú.  
Do what I told you.
7. Bósála mosálá na binú  
libosó molílí ékwéya.  
Do the work before night falls.

8. Ebongí mókó na káti na  
binú ásilisa mosálá  
libosó molílí ékwéya.
- One of you has to finish the work before night falls.
9. Ebongí mókó na káti na  
binú ásilisa mosálá  
libosó mói ébima.
- One of you has to finish the job before the sun rises.
10. Ifo mibalé na káti na  
bango báslisa mosálá  
libosó mói ébima.
- Two of them have to finish the job before the sun comes up.

Pattern Drill 2

1. Yáká kosálisa ngái  
nálongola mésa.
- Come help me move the table out.
2. Yáká ósálisa ngái  
nálongola mésa.
- Come help me move the table out.
3. Yáká kobéndisa ngái  
sandúku.
- Come help me move the trunk.
4. Yáká óbéndisa ngái  
sandúku.
- Come help me move the trunk.
5. Yáká kofwándisa ngái.
- Come over for a chat. Come over and keep me company.
6. Yáká ófwandisa ngái.
- Come over for a chat. Come over and keep me company.
7. Yáká kogumbisa ngái  
bilambá ya mbétu.
- Come help me fold the sheets.
8. Yáká ogúmbisa ngái  
bilambá ya mbétu.
- Come help me fold the sheets.
9. Yáká togumba bilambá  
ya mbétu.
- Come, let's fold the sheets.
10. Yáká tóbénda sandúku.
- Come, let's move the trunk.

Pattern Drill 3

1. Ezali likoló ya mésa,  
penepene ya tásı.  
It's on the table next to the  
cup.
2. Ezali likoló ya mésa, kási  
penepene ya tásı.  
It's on the table next to the  
cup.
3. Ezali na mabelé, penepene  
ya monoko ya ndako.  
It's on the floor by the door.
4. Ezali na mabelé, kási  
penepene ya monoko  
ya ndako.  
It's on the floor by the door.
5. Ezali likoló ya mésa, na  
kátı ya búuku mibalé.  
It's on the table between the  
books.
6. Ezali likoló ya mésa, kási  
na kátı ya búuku mibalé.  
It's on the table between the  
books.
7. Ezali na kátı ya línzanza,  
na nsé ya mbétu.  
It's in a box under the bed.
8. Ezali na kátı ya línzanza,  
kási na nsé ya mbétu.  
It's in a box under the bed.
9. Ezali na kátı ya sáni,  
likoló ya línínisa.  
It's on a plate in the window.
10. Ezali na kátı ya sáni,  
kási likoló ya línínisa.  
It's on a plate in the window.

## Unit 22

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Otobisi óyo ezali' kokende  
wápi?

Where is this bus going?

-B-

2. Marensa. Olingí ókende  
wápi?

To Marenza. Where do you  
want to go?

-A-

3. Kimwénza. Sókó nakamáti  
yangó nakokóma té?

To Kimwenza. If I take it,  
won't I get there?

-B-

4. Okokóma, kásí noki té, mpó  
okokita mbala mingi na  
nzela.

You'll get there, but not fast  
because you'll (have to)  
change busses several times  
on the way.

-A-

5. Otobisi mosusu óyo ekendéke  
mbala mókó na Kimwénza  
ezali?

Is there another bus that  
goes directly to Kimwenza?

-B-

6. Sókó olingí óyo wána,  
okozila mwáa ngonga  
mingi na esíká otélémi.

If you want that one, you'll  
(have to) wait quite a  
while where you are standing.

-A-

7. Okanisi ngonga bóni?

How long do you think?

**-B-**

8. Nayébi té, mpó otobísí  
mókó ya Kimwenza eleki  
mwáa sika óyo. I don't know because a bus  
to Kimwenza went by just  
a moment ago.

**-A-**

9. Yébisá ngái nainu, otobísí  
ezalaka mpé malámu na  
kátí? Tell me, is the interior of  
this bus clean?

**-B-**

10. Ezalí malámu, mabé ndé  
makelélé mingi. It's clean, only there's lots  
of noise.

**-A-**

11. Longwá áwa tíí na Kimwenza  
baarrets bizali bóní? From here to Kimwenza how many  
stops are there?

**-B-**

- mpámba free, worthless, only,  
without reason, vain  
12. Nakanísí mibalé too  
mísatu mpámba. I believe only two or three.

**-A-**

13. Tálélá ngái nainu kúná,  
óyo wáná bú s ya Kimwenza? Look over there, isn't that  
the bus to Kimwenza?

**-B-**

- makilá blood; fate, destiny  
14. Ozalí na makilá malámu  
lelo, yangó wáná bú s  
ya Kimwenza. You're in luck today, it's  
the Kimwenza bus.

## USEFUL PHRASES

- Epái wápi bazuáká taksí? Where is the taxi stand?
- Epái wápi gare ya otobísí ezalí? Where is the bus station?
- Epái wápi gare ya masíni ezalí? Where is the train station?
- Epái wápi libánda ya avío ezalí? Where is the airport?
- Epái wápi libóngó ya masúwa ezalí? Where is the ferry crossing?
- Tiyá kítí ya bíbendé na balasání. Where is the harbor?
- Tiyá kítí ya nkékéle na balasání. Put the metal chairs on the veranda.
- Tiyá ekolo ya nkékéle na balasání. Put the wicker chairs on the veranda.
- Masó akotóbola ndéle lininísa na efelo. Put the basket on the porch.
- Masó akotóbola lininísa na efelo mokolo nsíma ya lobi. The mason will cut a window in the wall some time in the future.
- Masó akotóbola lininísa na efelo mokolo nsíma ya mikolo misátu. The mason will cut a window in the wall the day after tomorrow.  
(See Note 22.2.)
- Masó atóbólakí lininísa na efelo lobilobi eleki. The mason cut a window in the wall the day before yesterday.
- Masó atóbólakí lininísa na efelo mikolo misátu mileki. The mason cut a window in the wall three days ago.
- Lokótó matokó. Pick up the sleeping mats.
- Lokótó nkóní. Gather some firewood.
- Lokótó bitení ya talatala. Pick up the pieces of the mirror.

taksi	(taxi)	taxicab
gare		station
libóngó, ma-		shore, quay, wharf, dock
balasáni		veranda, porch; hat brim
nkekéle, n-		cane, reed, liana, wickerwork
masó (maçon)		mason, bricklayer
-tóbolo		to pierce, puncture; speak ill of someone
ndéle		some time, in the future
litókó, ma-		mat, sleeping mat
nkóni, n-		firewood
talatalá		mirror, pane of glass, spectacles, lamp, chimney

## NOTES

- 22.1 /longwá áwa tíí na Kimwénza/  
Review Notes 8.9 and 9.5

- 22.2 /nsíma ya mikolo misátu/

The meaning of the above phrase is ambiguous. The speaker on whose speech this manual is based uses this phrase only in the sense, 'three days from now', but many persons use this phrase to mean 'two days from now'.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Otobísí óyo ekokende wápi? Where is this bus going?
2. Otobísí óyo ekotéleme na Marenza. This bus is going to Marenza.
3. Otobísí óyo ekokómá na Kimwénza. This bus will take you to Kimwenza.
4. Nakamáti búš na Kimwénza. I took the bus to Kimwenza.
5. Nakamáti búš mbala mókó. I took the bus (only) once.
6. Okotéleme na arrêt mbala mókó. The bus will stop (only) once.

7. Sókó okamáti yangó,  
okotéleme na arrêt.  
If you take that one, you'll stop only once (i.e., you get off at the second bus stop.)
8. Sókó okamáti yangó, okokoma  
noki.  
If you take this one, you'll get there quickly.
9. Sókó olingí óyo wáná,  
okokoma nobí.  
If you take that one, you'll get there fast.
10. Sókó olingí óyo wáná, ezali  
malámu mabé ndé makéléle.  
If you take that one, it's O.K. but there's a lot of noise.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Okanísí ngonga bóni?  
How long do you think it will be?
2. Okanísí arrêts ya otobisi  
bizali bóni?  
How many stops do you think the bus makes?
3. Arrêts ya otobisi bizali  
bóni na Kimwénza?  
How many stops are there on the way to Kimwenza?
4. Okotóngá ndáko misátu  
na Kimwénza.  
You are going to build three houses at Kimwenza.
5. Okotóngá ndáko misátu sókó  
osombí esiká otélémi.  
If you buy the ground where you are standing, you can build three houses on it.
6. Okomiyibisa bilóko sókó  
osombí esiká otélémi.  
If you buy that place, you'll be the cause of your things being stolen yourself. (i.e., knowing the danger of theft there, you would be foolish to make it easy for thieves.)
7. Okomiyibisa bilóko sókó  
akótí na ndako.  
If you go into the house, you'll be responsible for anything that's stolen.

8. Okolobaloba mingi sókó  
akótí na ndáko. If he goes into the house, you'll talk and talk.
9. Okolobaloba mingi ntángu  
akokéndé na Amérique. You'll complain a lot when he goes to America.
10. Ntángu akokéndé na Amérique  
nakozala malamu. If you go to America, I'll be all right.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Motu ya kabinda akátí mwáa eténi ya libáyá. The carpenter cut a notch in the wood.
2. Motu ya kabinda alongólí  
mwáa ndámbo ya libáyá. The cabinetmaker cut out a notch in the wood.
3. Motu mókó alongólí mwáa ndámbo ya libáyá. Someone cut out a notch in the wood.
4. Motu mókó afungólákí masíni  
ya kosukola bílambá. Someone turned on the washing machine.
5. Motu mókó akangákí masíni  
ya kosukola bílambá. Someone turned off the washing machine.
6. Mobongísí akangákí masíni ya kosukola bílambá. The repairman turned off the washing machine.
7. Mobongísí akatísí lisálá  
na mbángu. The repairman crossed the field on the run.
8. Mbwá ekatísí lisálá na mbángu. The dog crossed the field in a hurry.
9. Mbwá elálaka na nse ya ndáko. The dog sleeps under the house.
10. Mbwá elálaka na kátí ya ndáko mibale. The dog sleeps between the houses.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Tíyá kítí ya nkékélé na balasáni. Put the wicker chairs on the porch.
2. Tíyá kítí ya mabáyá na kúku. Put the wooden chairs in the kitchen.
3. Masó akotóbola ndéle lininisa na kúku. The mason will cut a window in the kitchen some time later in the future.
4. Masó akotóbola ndéle lininisa na ndáko ya kolía. The mason will cut a window in the dining room one of these days.
5. Tandá matokó nyónso na ndáko ya kolía. Spread all the mats in the dining room.
6. Tandá matokó nyónso na mói mpó makauka. Spread all the mats in the sun to dry.
7. Bói atíki matokó nyónso na mói mpó makauka. The house boy left all the mats in the sun to dry.
8. Bói atíki mésa ya nkékélé na libánda. The boy left the wicker table outside.
9. Nání atíki mésa ya nkékélé na libánda? Who left the wicker table outside?
10. Nání atíki mésa ya bibendé na libánda? Who left the metal table outside?

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Leló mokolo ya kosukola bilambá. Today is wash day.
2. Leló mokolo ya kobongisa ndáko. Today is housecleaning day.

3. Bána ya mosálá babongísí  
ndáko. The domestics straightened up  
the house.
4. Bána ya mosálá baákopasola  
nkóni. The domestics are splitting  
firewood.
5. Andelé aákopasola nkóni. André splitting firewood.
6. Andelé azilákí tata  
ákende mosálá. André was waiting for the boss  
to leave for work.
7. Andelé na Alobé bazilákí  
tata ákende na mosálá. André and Albert are waiting  
for the boss to leave for  
work.
8. Andelé na Alobé baákobímisa  
kítí na mésa na libánda. André and Albert are bringing  
the table and chairs outside.
9. Batóngi ndáko baákobímisa  
kítí na mésa na libánda. The masons are bringing the  
table and chairs outside.
10. Batóngi ndáko baákoyóka  
molungé míngi na nzótú. The masons are too hot.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mwána óyo azalí na mayéle  
mokúsé. This child is mentally retarded.
2. Mwána óyo aákokómbo talatalá  
na etení ya elambá. The child is wiping the mirror  
with a piece of cloth.
3. Kulútú na ngái aákokómbo  
talatalá na etení ya  
elambá. My sister is wiping the mirror  
with a piece of cloth.
4. Kulútú na ngái azaláká na  
mótuka ya mwíndu. My brother used to have a black  
automobile.
5. Mokómby balabálá azaláká  
na mótsuka ya mwíndu. The streetcleaner used to have  
a black automobile.

6. Mokombi balabala azali na  
makila malamu lelo. The road repairman was lucky today.
7. Léki na ye azali na makila  
malamu lelo. Your brother was lucky today.
8. Léki na ye alongoli  
bolangiti na bilamba  
nyonso ya mbetu. Your sister took off the blanket and all the bed clothes.
9. Nayébi té nani alongoli  
bolangiti na bilamba  
nyonso ya mbetu. I don't know who took off the blankets and all the bed clothes.
10. Nayébi té epai ya gare  
ya masini ezali. I don't know where the train station is.

## Unit 23

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Bána bakeí wápi? Where have the children gone?

-B-

2. Bakeí na etéyolo kosakana na ndembó. They have gone to school to play soccer.

-A-

3. Sókó toléí mabé? Mpo nazali kokende epái. Suppose we eat, that'd be all right, wouldn't it? Because I'm going somewhere.

-B-

4. Wápi? Where?

-A-

Nzámbe	God
Ndáko-Nzámbe	church
-lóngana	to marry, get married (Christian rite)

5. Nalingí nákendé na Ndáko-Nzámbe kotála bolóngani ya moningá na ngái Michel. I want to go to the church to be present at the marriage of my friend Michel.

-B-

-bálana	to marry, get married (traditional)
---------	--

6. Baákobálana lelo? Are they getting married today?

## -A-

7. Leló kó! na mpokwa! Yes indeed, this afternoon.

## -B-

8. Sóki bána bazalákí áwa,  
ndé tokeí bisu mibale. If the children were here, we  
would go together.
9. Michel bangó na mwásí na  
yé balingání míngi mpénza. Michel and his wife really love  
each other.

## -A-

10. Ezali ya sóolo! Bolingo  
na bangó eútá bomwána. That's true. They have loved  
each other since childhood.

## -B-

11. Nsimá ya Ndáko-Nzámbe,  
bokokénde kobina wápi? After (having been at) the  
church, where are you going  
to dance?

## -A-

12. Nakanísí na ndáko ya Michel. I believe at Michel's house.

## -B-

13. Ózóngaka ntángu malámu! Come home at a reasonable hour.

## USEFUL PHRASES

- Mamélo azalí kosámbela. The nun is praying.
- Mamélo azalí kotanga búuku  
ya bisáumbo. The nun is reading (from) the  
prayerbook.
- Mamélo alátí sutání ya mpémbe. The nun is wearing a long  
white robe.
- Mópe aákobálisa balónganí. The priest is marrying the  
couple.

Pastele aákobálisa balóngani.	The minister is marrying the couple.
Lopéte ya maliásı ezali ya mbóngó.	The wedding ring is made out of silver.
Lopéte ya bolóngani ezali ya wólo.	The wedding ring is made out of gold.
Zúzı apésí bangó ndingisa ya koboma libála.	The judge gave them a divorce.
Zúzı apésí bangó nzelá ya koboma libála.	The judge gave them a divorce.
Azalí mokristu ya mópe.	He is Catholic.
Azalí mokristu ya misyónı.	He is Protestant.
Azalí mokristu ya ngelésa.	He belongs to the Salvation Army.
Azalí mopagáno.	He is a pagan.
Nganga nkísı aákobikisa motu ya maláli.	The medicine man heals people.
Nganga nkísı aákobengana badiábolo.	The medicine man chases away the evil spirits.
Nganga nkísı anókísı mbúla.	The medicine man made it rain.
Tómbolá mosikitéle.	Put up the mosquito netting.
Kángáká mosikitéle.	Always keep the mosquito netting closed.
Nabótámi na Zavié.	I was born in January.
Nabótámi na Fevlié.	I was born in February.
Nabótámi na Málasi.	I was born in March.
Nabótámi na Apríli.	I was born in April.
Nabótámi na Maí.	I was born in May

Nabótámi na Yúní.	I was born in June.
Nabótámi na Yúli.	I was born in July.
Nabótámi na Áugustí.	I was born in August.
Nabótámi na Setémbe.	I was born in September.
Nabótámi na Okotóbe.	I was born in October.
Nabótámi na Novémbe.	I was born in November.
Nabótámi na Desémbe.	I was born in December.
mamélo (ma mère)	nun
-sámba	to plead
-sámbela	to plead for someone; pray; perform/conduct religious services
esámbo, bi-	prayer
sutáni (soutane)	cloth (clergy); cassock
-balisa	to marry, give in marriage, perform a marriage ceremony
pastélé (pasteur)	minister, clergyman (Protestant)
maliásí (mariage)	marriage
bolóngani, bolongáni, ma-	marriage (Christian rite); married person
wólo	gold
zúzi, zúze (juge)	judge; court, tribunal
libála, ma-	marriage (traditional)
mokristu, monkristu, ba-	Christian
mísyóni (mission)	missionary, clergyman (Protestant)

ngélesa	Protestant, Salvation Army
mopagáno, ba-	pagan
nganga, ba-	a specialist, master of trade; native doctor; one who conducts religious services
-benga	to follow, hunt, chase, pursue; approach, go to; to be on the point of
diábolo, ba-	devil, evil spirit
mosikitéle, mi-	mosquito netting
(moustiquaire)	

## NOTES

## 23.1 Suggestive Cohortative

Sókó toléí mabé?

/sókó/ and the immediate past mark a suggestive cohortative, which usually translates, 'Suppose...', e.g., /Sókó toléí mabé?/, 'Suppose we eat, that'd be all right, wouldn't it?'

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Mwána akeí wápi? Where has the child gone?
2. Mwána akeí kotéya na etéyelo. The boy has gone to teach at the school.
3. Molakisi aákotéya na etéyelo. The instructor is teaching the school.
4. Molakisi aákolóngana léló na Ndáko-Nzámbe. The instructor is getting married at the church today.

5. Baníngá baákolóngana lèló na Ndáko-Nzámbe. My friends are getting married at the church today.
6. Baníngá bakozónga na ntángu malámu. My friends won't get back too late.
7. Tatá akozónga na ntángu malámu. My father will get back fairly early.
8. Tatá akokéndé kobína na ndáko ya Michel. My father is going to dance at Michel's.
9. Balóngani bakokéndé kobína na ndáko ya Michel. The married couple(s) will dance at Michel's house.
10. Balóngani bazóngí ó mbóka. The husband and wife went to their village.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Nasómbélí ndáko lifungóla ya sika. I bought a new key for the house.
2. Nasómbélí babíni masanga. I bought the dancers some drinks.
3. Tozalí kopésa babíni masanga. We are giving the dancers some drinks.
4. Tozalí kopésa balóngani bosálisi. We are giving the couple assistance.
5. Tozalí kosénga lífúta na basómbi. We are asking the purchasers for payment.
6. Toutí kosénga lífúta na basómbi. We have just asked the purchasers for payment.
7. Toutí kopésa yé liyébisa. We have come to give him a notice.

8. Motóngi ya ndako azali  
kopésa yé liyébisa. The contractor is going to give him the notice.
9. Motóngi ya ndako azali na ebútelí ya mabáyá. The builder has a wooden ladder.
10. Mobomi azalákí na ebútelí ya mabáyá. The assassin had a wooden ladder.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Akozala kotómbala mosikitélé likoló libosó ya kolála. He'll put up the mosquito netting before going to sleep.
2. Tokangáká mosikitélé likoló libosó ya kolála. We closed the mosquito netting before going to bed.
3. Tokangáká mabóko ntángu azwáká likámá. We crossed our arms when he had an accident. (i.e., we did not give him any assistance.)
4. Bangó mibaleé bamípésánáká mabóko ntángu azwáká likámá. He aided the person ('they mutually gave hands') who had an accident.
5. Bangó mibaleé bamípésánáká monoko libosó bákabwáná. They promised to write to each other after they separated.
6. Tatá apésáká ngái monoko libosó tókabwáná. My father gave me some advice before we separated.
7. Tatá apésáká ngái mwásí ya kobála. My father obtained a wife for me.
8. Atá ndéle nakozwa mwásí ya mobála. I will get married sooner or later.
9. Atá ndéle nakozwa bokonzi na mbóka na bisú. Sooner or later I'll have the power in our country.
10. Ndé yó mokonzi na mbóka na bisú? Are you the chief of state of our country?

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Nakomi chec. I wrote a check.
2. Natondísí chec. I filled out a check.
3. Natindélí yé chec. I sent him a check.
4. Natindi yé na báñki. I sent him to the bank.
5. Natindi chec na báñki. I sent the check to the bank.
6. Nazalí na mbóngó na báñki. I have money in the bank.
7. Nazwi mbóngó na báñki. I deposited money in the bank.
8. Naséngí mbóngó na báñki. I withdrew money from the bank.
9. Nakeí kozwá mbóngó na báñki. I withdrew money from the bank.
10. Nakeí kodefa mbóngó na báñki. I'm going to the bank to borrow some money.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Efelo ya ndako ebúkáni. The wall of the house collapsed.
2. Efelo ya ndako ezali motánéso. The wall of the house is yellow.
3. Elambá na yé ya maliásí ezali motánéso. Her wedding gown is light yellow.
4. Elambá na yé ya bolóngani ezali motánéso. Her wedding gown is light yellow.
5. Elambá na yé ya bolóngani euti na Mpútú. Her wedding gown came from Europe.

6. Lopéte na yé ya bolóngani  
eútí na Mpútú. Her wedding ring came from Europe.
7. Lopéte na yé ya bolóngani  
ezali ya wólo. Her wedding ring is gold.
8. Ntángu na yé ya mabóko  
ezali ya wólo. His wristwatch is gold.
9. Ntángu na yé ya mabóko  
ekúfi. His wristwatch is broken.
10. Ntángu na yé ya ndáko  
ekúfi. His alarm clock is broken.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Mokandá ezalákí likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa. The letter was on the book on the table.
2. Natiyí yangó likoló ya búuku óyo ezalákí likoló ya mésa. I put it on the book on the table.
3. Natiyí yangó epái otíkáki. I put it where you left it.
4. Nazwáki ekomeli epái otíkáki. I found the pen where you left it.
5. Nazwáki ekomeli likoló ya  
mésa na eténi ya kolia. I found the pencil on the table in the dining room.
6. Tiyélá ngái mpóndu na lósó  
likoló ya mésa na eténi ya kolia. Put me some rice with manioc leaves on the table in the dining room.
7. Tiyélá ngái mpóndu na lósó  
balámbí na pilipíli na  
mafúta motáné. Put me out some rice with manioc leaves cooked with peppers and palm oil.

8. Pésá ngái bilóko balámbí  
na pilipili na mafúta  
motáné. Give me something cooked with  
peppers and palm oil.
9. Pésá ngái bilóko otíkákí  
lóbí na mpókwa. Give me some of the food that  
you had left yesterday  
afternoon.
10. Lakísá ye ekótí otíkákí  
lóbí na mpókwa. Show her the hat that you  
left yesterday afternoon.

### 23.2. Distant Indefinite Future

Atá ndéle nakozwa mwásí ya kobála.

/atá ndéle/, 'even sometime', is used to refer to something that is hoped or wished for but which is way off in the future if at all, as in the example above, 'I'll get married one of these days.

## Unit 24

## Basic Sentences

-A-

1. Bozali na bileko bóni na  
mbúla mókó? How many seasons do you have  
per year?

-B-

2. Míbale, mókó ya mbúla,  
mosusu ya elanga. Two, one rainy and the other  
dry.

-A-

3. Eleko ya elanga ezali  
ntángu nini? When is the dry season?

-B-

4. Ebandaka na sánzá ya mókó  
tíi na sánzá ya motóbá. It lasts from January to June.

-A-

5. Óyo ya mbúla? And the rainy season?

-B-

6. Elanga ya mbúla ekámáti  
sánzá ya motóbá, tíi  
na óyo ya zómí na míbale. The rainy season lasts the other  
six months from June until  
December.

-A-

7. Lobélá ngái mwáa makambo  
elekaka ntángu wáná. Tell me something about time.

## -B-

8. Ntángu ya mbúla makámá  
mapusí míngi, mpámba  
te mbúla ekonókó míngi  
mpé makásí.

During the rainy season there  
are a lot of natural calam-  
ities because it rains a lot  
and very hard.

## -A-

nkáké, n-

thunder, lightning

9. Bozalí na nkáké té na  
mbóka na binú?

Don't you have a lot of thunder?

## -B-

10. Tozalí na nkáké míngi  
mpé makásí lokóla.

We have a lot of thunder, and  
it's quite loud.

## -A-

11. Ntángu ya mbúla batu  
basálaka toó babimaka  
libándá té?

During the rain people don't  
work or go outside?

## -B-

-zinda

to sink, drown, flood

12. Mpó na níní té, batu  
babimaka lokóla ntángu  
nyónsó, káká ndé bandáko  
mosúsú ya kalakala na  
banzelá mosúsú ya mikémiké  
bibúkanaka toó bizindaka.

Why not? People usually go  
out, only there are some  
old houses and small roads  
that are cut off or submerged  
under water.

## -A-

13. Ndénge níní okoki koyéba  
sókó mbúla elingí konóka?

How can you know if it's going  
to rain?

## -B-

14. Ezalí mpásí té, okomóna  
 likoló ekomi moindu,  
 mpe mbóka molíli, na  
 ntángu wáná, batu ná  
 nyama bakomí kolúka  
 ndáko na bangó.

It's not difficult. You will  
 see the sky become black and  
 the village gets dark, men  
 and animals start looking  
 for shelter.

## USEFUL PHRASES

Eleko ya mpela ezalí malámu  
 na kolóbo.

The rainy season is good for  
 fishing.

Eleko ya mpela ekokólisa  
 bilóna mbángumbángu.

The rainy season makes plants  
 grow very fast.

Eleko ya mpela ekuémelaka  
 sánzá minei toó mitánu.

The rainy season lasts four  
 or five months.

Mabelé ya zélo ebongí na  
 mbuma té.

Sandy soil isn't suitable for  
 fruits.

Mabelé ya zélo ebongí na  
 ndunda té.

Sandy soil isn't suitable for  
 vegetables.

Mabelé ya zélo ebongí na  
 bilóna té.

Sandy soil isn't suitable for  
 plants.

Mpáu, mpó na kobóngola mabelé.

A spade is for turning over  
 earth.

Líkwangola, mpó na kikáta  
 nzeté ya miké.

A machete is for cutting small  
 trees.

Nkóngó, mpó na kokata matítí  
 mpe kotímola mabulú.

A hoe is for cutting weeds and  
 digging wells.

Akónaka masángú.

He raises corn.

Akónaka kokotí.

He raises coconuts.

Akónaka mángolo.	He raises mangoes.
Atímóli tomáto.	He hoed the tomatoes.
Atímóli ngúba.	He hoed the peanuts.
Atímóli libélá na nkóngó.	He dug a trench with a hoe.
Akéngelaka bibwélé.	He raises animals.
Abókolaka nyama.	He raises animals.
Abókolaka ngómbe.	He keeps cows.
Abókolaka ntaba.	He keeps goats.
Abókolaka meme.	He keeps sheep.
Abókolaka mpata.	He keeps sheep.
Mbóka ezíndí na mái.	The village is flooded.
Mwána azíndí na mái.	The child drowned.
Masúwa mazíndí na mái.	The boat sank.
lisángú, lisango, ma-	a grain of corn
kókoti	coconut, coconut palm
língolo, ma-	mango, mango tree
ngúba, n-	peanuts
libélá, ma-	pit, hole, trench, well, valley
ewélé, br-	small domestic animal, sheep, goat
ngómbe, n-	cow, bull
ntaba, n-	goat
mpata, m-	sheep
mpela, m-	rain, rainy season, flood
-lóbo	to fish
-lóna	to plant, sow

bilóna	plant, planting
zélo	sand
ndúnda, n-	vegetables
likwangola, ma-	machete, chopping-knife; part of a village where ex-soldiers live
nkóngó, n-	hoe, pick-ox
-kóna	to plant, sow

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 1

1. Bozali na bileko bóni  
na mbúla mókó? How many seasons do you have  
in a year?
2. Tozali na bileko mibalé  
na mbúla mókó. We have two seasons in year.
3. Tozali na basángá zómi  
na mibalé na mbúla mókó. We have twelve months in a  
year.
4. Tozali na basánzá zómi na  
mibalé mpó na eleko ya  
mbúla na eleko ya elanga. We have twelve months during  
the dry season and wet season.
5. Lobélá ngái mwáa makambo mpó  
na eleko ya mbúla na eleko  
ya elanga. Tell me something about the wet  
and dry seasons.
6. Lobélá ngái mwáa makambo  
elekaka na ntángu wána. Tell me something about that  
time.
7. Na ntángu wána makámá  
mapusí mingi. During that time, there are a  
lot of natural calamities.
8. Makámá mapusí mingi mpámba  
te mbúla ekonóko mingi  
mpé makásí. There are a lot of natural  
calamities because it rains  
long and hard.

9. Tozali na nkáke míngi,  
mpámba te mbúla ekonóko  
míngi mpé makásí.
10. Tozali na nkáke míngi na  
mbóka na bisú.
- We have a lot of thunder and lightning when it rains hard for a long time.
- We have a lot of thunder and lightning in our country.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 2

1. Ntángu ya mbúla batu  
basalaka too babimaka  
libánda té?
- During the rain, people don't work or go outside?
2. Mpó na níní té, batu  
basalaka mpe babimaka  
libánda?
- Why don't people work or go outside?
3. Mpó na níní té, tozali  
na nkáke míngi mpé  
makásí.
- Why not, we have a lot of very loud thunder.
4. Tozali na nkáke míngi mpé  
makásí, kási ntángu ya  
elanga té.
- We have a lot of very loud thunder, but not in the dry season.
5. Bilóko ya kolia bizali  
míngi ntángu ya mbúla,  
kási ntángu ya elanga té.
- There are lots of things to eat in the rainy season, but not in the dry season.
6. Bilóko ya kolia bizali  
míngi ntángu ya mbúla,  
mpó mái ezali míngi na  
mabele.
- There are many things to eat in the rainy season because there is a lot of water in the ground.
7. Mpó mái ezali míngi na  
mabele bambuma bikokóla  
malámu.
- Because there is lots of water in the ground, fruits grow very well.

8. Bambuma bikokóla malámu  
sókó mabelé ezali malámu. Fruits grow well if the soil is good.
9. Sókó mabelé ezali malámu  
bilóna bikokóla mbángu. If the soil is good, plants grow rapidly.
10. Bilóna bikokóla mbángu  
na ntángu ya mbúla. Plants grow rapidly in the rainy season.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 3

1. Lóbí mokolo níní? What day is tomorrow?
2. Lóbí mokolo ya mosálá mitánu. Tomorrow is Friday.
3. Nakosála té mokolo ya mosálá mitánu. I won't work Friday.
4. Nakosála té na ntóngó mpé na mpókwa. I won't work either the morning or the afternoon.
5. Akendéki na Stade Baudouin té na ntóngó mpé na mpókwa. He didn't go to the Stade Baudoin either in the morning or in the afternoon.
6. Akendéki na Stade Baudouin té lóbí na ntóngó. He didn't go to the Stade Baudouin yesterday morning.
7. Okoyáa lóbí na ntóngó. You will come tomorrow morning.
8. Okoyáa lóbí na masanga. You will come tomorrow with the drinks.
9. Lobélá yé áyáa na masanga lóbí. Tell him to bring some drinks tomorrow.
10. Lobélá yé áyáa na bána lelo. Tell him to bring the children today.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 4

1. Nakeí kosála na Kinsásá. I'm about to go to work in Leopoldville.
2. Nakeí kotanga buuku na ndáko. I'm about ready to read a book at home.
3. Nakosála bilanga na nsíma na ndáko. I'll cultivate the fields behind the house.
4. Nakosála bilanga na nsíma ya elanga. I'll work the fields after the dry season.
5. Balóni bakokéba na ntángu ya elanga. The cultivators are attentive during the dry season.
6. Balóni bakokéba na ntángu bakotímola mabelé. The cultivators pay attention when they are spading up the ground.
7. Bakotímola mabelé na nkóngó ná mpáu. They turn up the earth with hoes and spades.
8. Aákobóngola mabelé na nkóngó ná mpáu. They are turning over the ground with hoes and shovels.
9. Aákobóngola mabelé na ya nsúka ya elanga. They dig up the ground in the last month of the dry season.
10. Ebóngí malámu ólóna na sánzá ya nsúka ya elanga. It's best to cultivate in the last month of the dry season.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 5

1. Mabelé ya mái eékokólisa bilóna mbángumbángu. Wet earth makes plants grow very fast.
2. Eleko ya mbúla eékokólisa bilóna mbángumbángu. The rainy season makes plants grow very fast.

3. Eleko ya mbúla ekoúmelaka  
sánzá minei too mitánu. The rainy season lasts four or five months.
4. Eleko ya mpela ekoúmelaka  
sánzá minei too mitánu. The rainy season lasts four or five months.
5. Eleko ya mpela ezali malámu  
na kolóbo. The rainy season is good for fishing.
6. Bwátu ezali malámu na  
 kolóbo. A dugout canoe is good for fishing.
7. Bwátu esálalamaka na mabáyá  
makásí. A dugout is (always) made of durable wood.
8. Ndáko ya bísu esálalamaka  
 na mabáyá makásí. Our house is built with strong timbers.
9. Ndáko na bísu ekabwání  
na biténi minei. Our house consists of four rooms.
10. Ndáko na bísu etóngámáká  
liboso ya etumba. Our house was built before the war.

## GRAMMATICAL DRILL 6

1. Bána batíki maloba na  
 ngái makeí mpámba. The children pay no attention to my words.
2. Bána batíki ndembó na  
libánda ya kosana. The children left the ball on the playground.
3. Na mpókwa bakobéte ndembó  
 na libánda ya kosana. This afternoon there will be a soccer game at the field.
4. Na mpókwa tokokende epái. This afternoon we will go somewhere.
5. Balóngani bakokendé epái. The couple will go somewhere.
6. Balóngani balátáki bilamba  
ya sika. The couple wore new clothes.

7. Lóbi bamónáki bangó balátaki  
    bilamba ya sika. Yesterday they appeared  
    wearing new clothes.
8. Lóbi bamónáki bangó ntángu  
baútaki na Ndako-Nzámbe. Yesterday they were seen  
    leaving the church.
9. Totindéláki mwásí na mobálí  
mbóté ntángu baútaki na  
    Ndako-Nzámbe. We said hello to the woman  
    and man as they were leaving  
    the church.
10. Totindéláki mwásí na mobálí  
mbóté nsíma ya bolóngani  
na bangó. We said hello to the woman and  
    man after their marriage.

## GLOSSARY

This vocabulary is alphabetized according to the stem consonant and not according to the prefixes, e.g., /mwána/, 'child', is alphabetized under 'a'.

a

mwáa	small, little, few
ái	oh, hey
aló (allô)	hello
'ambassade '	embassy
mwambe, mwambi	eight
mwána, óbána	child
bomwána, (ma-)	childhood
'Anglais'	English
Angelé (anglais)	English
aré (arrêt)	stop
aré ya otobísi	bus stop
mwásí, óbási	woman, female, left (opp. right)
atá, atáa	even, even if, although
atá ndélé	much later
bwátu, ómátu	dugout canoe, native boat
avásí (avance)	advance, part payment, deposit
avió (avion)	airplane, airmail

b

-bakísa	to add
-bála	to marry (traditional marriage)

## BASIC COURSE

---

libála, ma-	marriage (traditional native)
mbala, m-	time, times, often mostly
mbálá, m-	potato
balabálá, <sup>o</sup> balabálá	street, (broad) road
-bálaná	to marry, get married, marry each other (traditional marriage)
balasáni, <sup>o</sup> balasáni	veranda, porch; hat brim
ebale, bi-	stream, river
míbale	two
mobáli, mi-	man, male; right (opp. left)
-balisa	to marry, give in marriage, perform a marriage ceremony
-banda	to start, commence
bandá	from, since, beginning, starting, continuing/startng from
-bandaka	to begin regularly, to last, continue
libánda	outside; yard, field
mbanda, ba-	co-wife; brother-in-law married to wife's sister; sister-in-law married to husband's brother; people who don't like each other
ebandeli, bi-	beginning
bobandi, (ma-)	beginning, start
libángá, ma-	rock, stone
mobangé, mi-	elder, old man/woman, age

---

mbángu, mbángo, m-	speed, swiftness
bánki (banque)	bank
libáyá, ma-	wood, board; bench, seat; aim, target; blouse
mabé	bad, wicked, ugly
mbe	then, otherwise, else; perhaps; introduces main clause of con- ditional sentence
-beká	to borrow, buy on credit, ask for the loan of
-bekísa	to lend, give as a loan, pay in advance, sell on credit
mobéko, ml-	law, regulation, obligation, duty
libélá, ma-	pit, hole, trench; well; valley
-bélé	to hurt, suffer, be sick
mabelé	ground, earth, floor
mbele	then; perhaps; else, otherwise introducing main clause of hypothetical supposition
mbeli, m-	knife
-bém̄ba	to travel
mobém̄bo, ml-	trip, journey
-bénda	to draw/pull/move in, out, up, off, over
ebendé, bi-	piece of metal, iron, coin, metal part
libendé, ma-	rod, post, pole; tamper, tamping stick

-bendisa	to help pull/move
-benga	to follow, hunt, chase, pursue; approach, go to; to be on the point of
-benga	to call, summon; call, name, order (merchandise)
-bengana	to drive away, pursue
'besoin'	need
-bete, -beta	to hit, strike, knock, beat
ebeteli, bi-	hammer, tool for hitting
mbetu, mbeto, m-	bed, pallet
-bika	to recover, lived, be rescued
mbila, m-	palm nut, palm tree
-bima	to go out, come out, go for a walk, emerge
-bimaka	to go/come out regularly
mobimba, (mi-)	entire, whole
-bimisa	to have (something) come/go out
-bimisela	to have (something come/go out for someone)
-bina	to dance
bobina, ma-	a dance
mobini, mi-	dancer
mbisi, m-	fish
bói, (ba-)	houseboy, servant

mbóka, m-	village, region, district; tribe, race; residence, address
libóké, ma-	bunch, group, crowd; pack, package; swarm
lobóko, ma-	arm, sleeve, side, hand
mobókoli, ba-	raiser, one who cares for/raises children/animals
-bókololo	to bring up, raise, rear, feed, breed (animals)
bolangítı, bolangísı	blanket
-bolosé (brosser)	to brush
bolósı (brosse)	brush
-boma	to kill, murder, slaughter; hunt catch; damage badly, destroy, extinguish, efface, erase, wipe (off); abolish, eliminate, do away with
-bomba	to hide, keep, store, preserve, shelter; observe, obey (law, custom)
ebómbeli, bi-	place/rack/cabinet for storage; dresser, bookcase, china-cabinet
mobomı, mı-	killer, murderer, assassin, butcher
-bongısa	to put in order, prepare, repair, arrange, dress up
-bongısama	to be repaired (by someone)
-bongısela	to repair or prepare for someone

mobóngisi, ba-	repairer
mobóngisi ya mótuka	mechanic
-bongo, -bonga	to be suitable, be in order, fit, be fitting
libóngó, ma-	shore, quay, wharf, dock
mbóngó, m-	money; silver
-bóngola	to change, turn around; stir; interpret, translate; dis- place, remove, shift
-bósana	to forget, be mistaken, make a mistake
liboso, ma-	front; before, in front of; first, last, farthest
-bóta	to give birth to, bear, produce
libóta, libótá, ma-	family, household, descent
mbótama, m-	birth
mbóte	greetings, good morning/after noon/evening
mobótí, ba-	parent
bobótisi, (ma-)	obstetrics, midwifery
mobótisi, ba-	midwife
-botolo	to take/snatch away, confiscate, impound; pillage
'bourgmestre'	mayor
'bourse d'études'	scholarship
-bóya	to refuse, reject, not want, despise; abandon, leave for good

-búka	to break, demolish, pick, gather; conquer, change direction
-búkana	to be broken; gather, assemble, be equally strong
mbúla, m-	rain, rainy season; year
bule' (bleu)	blue
libúlú, ma-	well, pit, toilet
mbuma, m-	fruit; sore, boil; grain, seed; change, coins
libumu, ma-	stomach, belly, womb
-buna, -bunda	to fight, wage war; wrestle, struggle
-bunga	to forget, make a mistake, be wrong; lose; get lost; lose one's way; die
-bungisela	to lose
'bureau'	office
bús	bus (see otobísí)
-buta	to rise, ascend, climb (up), creep (up), go up, increase
ebúteli, bi-	ladder, stairs; top, summit
-butisela	to send something (back) to someone
butó (bouton)	button
butú, <sup>o</sup> mutú	night
búuku, (ba-)	book
mbwá, m-	dog

-bwaka	to throw, reject, renounce; throw out, disown
ebwéle, bi-	small domestic animal, sheep, goat

c

'chec'	check
'chutes'	rapids
'cravate'	necktie

d

ndako, n-	house, building, room, shed, wall
Ndako-Nzámbe	church
ndambo, n-	part, piece, share, half
nde	then, introduces main clauses in conditional sentence
ndé	only, however, although, inspite of the fact that; a future marker in literary Lingala (Do <u>not</u> use as a future marker)
-défa	to borrow, buy on credit, ask for the loan of
-défisa	to lend, give as a loan, pay in advance, sell on credit
ndélé, n-	sometime, in the future
atá ndélé	much later
mondélé, mi-	white man, European
ndembó, n-	rubber; ball

ndéngé, n-	sort, kind, manner, way, quality
ndéngé na ndéngé	all kinds of
ndéngé nini	how
madésu	beans
díi	comrade, friend
midi	noon (ll-l)
diábolo, ba-	devil, evil spirit
ndínga, n-	language
ndíngisa, n-, (See--língisa)	consent, permission, authority, authorization
ndóbo, n-	fishing, fish hook
bondóki, ma-	gun, rifle
ndúnda, n	vegetables
dzeke	steamshovel; front-end loader; earth mover; dump truck

e

éé (sometimes ingressive)	yes; oh
'election'	election
essénce	gasoline

f

falánga, falánka (franc)	franc
-fánda, -fwánda	to sit, be seated, live, reside
efándeli, bi-	seat, chair
-fándisa	to cause to sit, have sit

efelo, bi-	wall
flefélé, fèvèle (fièvre)	fever
fisi (fiche)	form, blank
foto (photo)	photograph, picture
Français (also Falansé)	French
frigo (frigo)	refrigerator, cold storage room
-funga	to shut, close; take grasp; button
-fungola	to open, release, unlock, unbutton
lifungola, ma-	key
lifungú, ma-	button
-fungwamaka	to be opened
-fúta	to pay; a tone, make up for
lifúta, ma-	pay, payment, salary
mafúta	oil, fat, grease
mofúteli, ba-	payer, tenant, renter
-fwanda	(See -fánda)
-fwándisa	(See -fandisa)

g

ngai	sour(ness)
ngái	I, me, my, mine
ngái (emphatic subject)	
Lingála	the Lingala language
mónganga, mí-	physician, European doctor
'gare'	station

---

'gaz'	gas
magazini (magasin)	store, shop; depot, storage place
gbagba, <sup>o</sup> gbagba	bridge
'gendarme'	policeman
-ngenge	to shine, blaze, gleam
-ngenisa	to cause to shine, blaze, gleam
mingi	much, many
bangó	they, them
boongó	thus, so
yango	they (impersonal)
ngola, n-	ngola tree; reddish powder make from its bark; red, purple, violet
lingolo, ma-	mango
ngombá, n-	mountain, hill
ngombe, n-	cow, bull
-ngomela	to iron for someone
-ngomelisela	to have something ironed for someone
ngonga, n-	time, hour, bell, gong; clock
'goudron'	tar
'gouvernement'	government
nguba, n-	peanut(s)
-gumba	to fold, bend; stoop
-gumbama	to be bent/folded/stoop
mongungi, monkungi, n-	mosquito

BASIC COURSE

---

ngúya' strength, power, ability,  
quality

móngwa, ml- salt

l

mái water; sap, juice

mái-mái liquid

mói sun, sunlight, daylight, day,  
the heat of the sun

ífo (il faut) it is necessary, to have to

nainu still, yet

k

kaba to give, state, divide, share;  
betray

kabinda, ba- carpenter, cabinetmaker

kabíné (cabinet) toilet; excrement

-kabola to hand out, distribute  
divide up, separate

-kalwana to be separated/divided/distributed

nkái, n- paddle, oar

kaka only

nkáké, n- thunder, lightning

kala formerly, earlier, old

kalesó (caleçon) shorts, underwear

-kálínga, -kálanga to roast, bake; fry

---

likámá, ma-	danger, accident, natural calamity; punishment, retribution
nkámá, monkámá	hundred
-kama ta	to take, receive, accept
likambo, ma-	difference, matter, case, dispute, affair
kamió (camion)	truck
kana	then, otherwise
-kána	to resolve, intend, threaten, promise
mokandá, mi-	letter, paper, document
-kanga	to wrap up, package; stop, cease, close, shut; take, grasp
-kangama	to be stopped, tied, captured, congealed
ekangeli, bi-	handle; band; devide for turning
-kangema	to be closed
bokangi, (ma-)	a stop, stopping
-kangwama	to be opened
-kangisa	to stop, cause to stop; join fasten, screw tight; detain
-kangola	to release, let go of, loose, open unroll, unlock, unfasten
-kangolela	to open for someone
-kangwa	to be open, be unlocked
-kanisa	to think, reflect

likanisi, ma-	thought, opinion, intention
kánya, nkánya, (n-)	fork, pitch fork, rake
kásí	but, on the contrary
makásí	very, much, strong, hard
-káta	to cut, chop
-mikata	to cut oneself
-kátana	to cut each other; get cut; stop
káti	in, inside (of), in the middle of, among; center, middle, inside
katíkatí	in between, in the middle/center of
-katísa	cause/have cut; cross; interrupt, change direction, go through bend, curve
-kauka, -kaoka	to be(come) dry
-kaukisa	to dry, cause to dry
káwa	coffee
likáyá, ma-	tobacco, cigarette, cigar
kazáka	coat, jacket, vest
moké, mi-	small, thin; smallness
-kéba	to pay attention, be attentive
likeí, ma-	egg
bokeí, (ma-)	departure, starting, separation discrimination, distinction
nkékélé, n-	cane, reed, liana, wickerwork

---

ekeko, bi-	picture, sculpture, statue
kelási	class, classroom, school
lokelé, n-	spoon
makelelé	quarrel, argument, sound of voices, noise
-kende	to go, go away; die
-kéngé	to take glances at, watch
-kéngéle	to watch, guard, keep; raise animals
mokéngeli, ba-	guard, keeper, protector, sentinel, overseer, warehouse-keeper
makílá	blood; fate, destiny
bokíla, ma-	hunt(ing)
mokíli, mi-	mainland, land; interior, inland; world
kiliyó, kilió (crayon)	pencil; legal charges, costs
bokiló, <sup>o</sup> bakiló	parent-in-law; brother/sister-in-law, good friend, acquaintances
nakinga, n-	bicycle
kiníni (quinine)	quinine
nkísi, n-	medicine, charm
-kitá	to go/come down, descend; decrease, diminish
kití	chair

BASIC COURSE

---

-kitisa	to cause to come down/descend; bring down, put down; take a person somewhere, drop off a person
kitóko	beauty, beautiful, pretty, fine; delicious, clean, neat
Kitúba, Kutúba	the Kituba language
kó	indeed, certainly; come on
mókó	one; certain, some
mokóbo, mi-	color, paint
-koka	to be able, can; be all present; be sufficient, enough
kóko, ba-	grandparent, grandchild
-kóla	to grow (up), increase
lokóla, n-	kind, sort, like, similar, such as
-kólisa	to cause to grow, bring up, raise, rear
ekólo, bi-	tribe (race), people of same place or language
nkóo, nkó, n-	intent, malice, purpose, will
kokótí	coconut, coconut palm
likoló, ma-	sky, heaven; up, top, surface, above, over, on
lokolo, ma-	leg, foot paw; wheel, rim, tire
mokolo, mi-	day
mokóló, ba-	grown person, adult
kólóngónu	health

---

monkolóto, mi-	line
-koma	to write, sign, inscribe, enroll
-kóma	to arrive, begin
-komama	to be written
-kómbama	to be swept/cleaned (by someone)
-kómbo, -kómba	to sweep, clean house; empty; wipe up/off; clean up/off
nkóbó, n-	name; honor, reputation
-komela	write to/for someone
ekomeli, bi-	writing instrument, writing, material, pencil, pen
ekomeli, bi-	pencil, pen, writing material
bokómí, (ma-)	arrival
mokomí, ba-	writer, author, scribe
-komisa	to start, begin; cause to start/ begin
komiséle (commissaire)	commissioner, policeman
-kóna	to plant, sow
nkondokó, n-	cat
nkóngó, n-	hoe, pickax
mokongo, mi-	back
-konza	to manage, rule
mokonzi	chief, king, boss, supervisor
kópo	glass, tumbler, cup
-kóta, kóto	to enter, go in
ekotí, bi-	hat (man's)

-kótisa	to cause to enter, insert, put in
nkóto	thousand
kovokasió (convocation)	notice, summons, traffic ticket
mokristu, monkristu, ba-	Christian
-kúfa	to die; wear out; be broken
kúku	kitchen; cook
-kulútú, ba-	older brother/sister
kúná	over there, yonder
-kunda	to bury; plant
monkungi; mongungi, n-	mosquito
mokúsé, mi-	short, small
-kúta	to meet, find, come upon
-kútana	to meet/find lack other
-kwá, -kwéya	to fall, fall down; take, get, obtain; cost
likwangola, ma-	machete, chopping-knife; part of a village where ex-soldiers live
-kwéisa	to drop, throw down, cut/pull down, cause to fall, demolish, give judgment againsts in a lawsuit
-kwéya	to fall, be involved in/lose a lawsuit

1

bolái, (ma-)	length, depth, height
molái, mi-	long, large, tall, deep, high
-laka	to give advice, set a time, promise; order
-lakisa	to show, display, teach, instruct
molakisi, ba-	teacher
-lála	to sleep, lie down, stay, remain
lilálala, ma-	orange
maláli, maládi (maladie)	sickness, illness
-lálista	to put to bed, put to sleep
-lamba	to cook, prepare food
elambá, bi-	cloth, material, piece of clothing
-lambela	to cook or prepare food for someone
molámbi, ba-	cook
malámu	good, well, fine
-landa	to follow, pursue; prosecute, sue; look for; woo, court
elanga	field, garde; dry season; year, cultivating season
lángi, n-	color, paint
-látá	to dress, put on clothes
-látisa	to dress, cause to put on clothes
biléi	food(s), meal
boleí, (ma-)	meal

-léisa	to feed, cause/give to eat
-leka	to go by, pass by, surpass, excel
-lekaka	to go/pass by regularly; to happen, continue to happen
léki, ba-	younger brother/sister
-lekisa	to have pass by, pass on; neglect; omit, miss
eleko, bi-	season, time, period
ləlo'	today
-lembe	to be(come) tired, weary; tender, done; (re)lax(ed), soft, moderate, abate
-lengèle	to prepare, get ready
elengi	pleasing to the senses; good taste/smell, beauty
letá (l'etat)	government, state Kikongo ya Leta Kituba
-lia	to eat
libwá	nine
miliki	milk
malíli	cold, shade, cool place
molíli	dark, obscure, darkness; ignorance
-limbisa	to forgive, pardon, excuse
bolimbisi, (ma-)	forgiveness, pardon
-linga	to want, like; be almost on the point of; love, be fond of

-lingana	to love/like each other; intertwine
-lingisa	to authorize, grant permission
bolingo, ma-	love, will
lísú, líso, <sup>o</sup> mísú, <sup>o</sup> mísó	eye (in pl.) with eyes open; with good vision/taste; un- afraid
-loba	to speak, tell, say
-lobaloba	to talk a lot, discuss, argue, complain
-lobaloba	to chat, engage in small talk, complain, talk nonsense
-lobela	to speak to
molobelí, ba-	speaker, intercessor, lawyer
molobi, ba-	speaker, lecturer
-lóbo	to fish
elóko, bi-	thing, object
bolóko, ma-	jail, prison
-lokotó	to pick up, gather, collect
bololo	bitter(ness), sour(ness)
-lóna	to plant, sow
bilóna	plant, planting, that which has been planted
-lóngana	to marry, get married (Christian rite)
balóngani	married couple(s)
bolóngani, bolongáni, ma-	marriage (Christian rite); married person

-longola, -longwa	to take away, remove, undress; wake up
bolongoli, (ma-)	removal, subtraction
lopitálo, ba-(hôpital)	hospital
loso	rice
-luka	to hunt, search
-lúka	to row/paddle a boat
-lukela	to hunt for (something) for someone
molunge, mi-	warmth, heat; fever, sweat; stifling
lútú	spoon

m

ma	of, belonging to
má	Here! Take it!
maliásí (mariage)	marriage
mama, ba-	mother
lománde (amende)	fine, penalty
-mata	to go up, climb, rise
'mécancien'	mechanic
-meká	to measure, weigh, try (out), test
bomeki, (ma-)	attempt, effort, try
-mélé	to drink, suck, smoke; take medicine
melesi (merci)	thanks
-melisa	to cause/give to drink

---

mamélo, ba- (ma mère)	nun
-mémé	to carry, transport
-memele	to carry for someone
momemí, ba-	porter, carrier, bearer
mésa	table
méyá, lomeyá	fifty-centime piece
lomingo	Sunday, week
-mónaná	to be seen, appear; see each other; get seen
-móno, -móna	to see, feel, observe
'Monsieur'	Mister, Sir, Gentleman
mwinda	light, lamp
mwindu, moindu, moindo, ba-	black, dark; a Negro, an African

n

na	in, of, by, with; and
ná	and, also, even, besides, in addition
minei	four
monéne, mi-	big, thick, wide, fat, tall
bóni	how much, how, many
náni, ba-	who, which
nini, ba-	what, which
moningá, mi-	friend, companion, colleague, peer
-nó, -nóko	to rain
noki	fast, quick, prompt, early

BASIC COURSE

---

-nókisa	to make/cause to rain
-nóko	(See -no)
nókó, ba-	uncle, mother's brother
mónoko, mi-	mouth, opening; word, message
bínú	you (pl.)
linu, líno, ma-	tooth
numeró (número)	number

o

ó	to, toward, at, in, on, by
óo	oh!
otobísí (autobus)	bus

p

limpa, ma-	bread, piece of bread
mopagáno, ba-	pagan
epái, bi-	side, part, direction
mpáku, mpáko, ni-	tax; corvee labor
paláki (plaque)	plate, plaque; auto licence plate
palato, ba-	errand boy, messenger postman
-palola	to skin, peel, scrape (off), scour (off)
mpámba, m-	free, worthless, only, vain, without reason; nothing
lopango, m-	enclosure, fence; plot of land; place of residence

---

-papola	to make thinner, shave off, remove an excess
'Parlementaire', ba-	member of Parliament
mpásı, m-	pain, suffering illness
-pasola	to tear (off), cleave, split (off), saw, clear (away)
pastéle (pasteur)	minister, clergyman (Protestant)
-pasuka	to be worn out
-paswa	to be split, torn; explode, split suddenly
mpata, m-	sheep
mpáta, m-	five-franc piece
pataló (pantalon)	trousers, pants
mpáu, mpáo, m-	shovel, spade
mopaya, ba-	stranger; guest, visitor; host
mpé	and, also, even
mópe, mompe, ba- (mon père)	priest (Catholic)
-pela	to be on fire, burn, be hit
mpela, m-	rain; rainy season; flood
-pelisa	to kindle, light; sharpen
mpéma, m-	breath
mpémbé	chalk, white; ivory
mpembéni, m-	side, edge; around, near, beside, along, next to
penepene	near, close, by against
mpenza, m-	only, alone, really, truly, completely

## BASIC COURSE

---

mopepe, m-	wind, air
-pésa	to give, provide with
-pévana	to give to each other
lopéte, m-	ring; stripe, braid
mompila, m-	undershirt, tee shirt, vest, sweater
pilipili	red pepper, pimento
mpió, m-	cold
piósi (pioche)	pick, pickafe
pitoló (petrole)	kerosene
mpó	thing, matter, affair; because, on account of -
mpó na nini	why
mpókwa, m-	afternoon, (until 6 p.m.)
polisi (police)	policeman, police
-polo	to be(come) wet/soggy/rotten; be beaten, defeated
pómpi	pump, spray; filling station
mpondú	manioc leaves (used as a vegetable)
mpongí, m-	sleep
-pono, pona	to choose, select, elect, prefer
mpósá, m-	urge, desire
pósi (poche)	pocket, pouch, sack
pósita (poste)	post office, post service, mail box

mpóso, m-	week; ration; Saturday; weekend, salary, pay
'président'	president
'prise'	plug (electrical)
'pull-over'	sweater
-pupa	to blow, fan, window; shake; clean by blowing/shaking
-púpola, pupola	to blow/shake/clean off
-pusa	to surpass, exceed, be very, be too much
-pusa	to push, shove
púsupúsu (pousse-pousse)	push cart; baby carriage, stroller
lipúta, ma-	pagne, long wrap-around skirt
putulú	cinders, ashes, dust, powder

r

rádio, radio'	radio
---------------	-------

s

sabóni (savon)	soap
mosai, monsai, mosapi, mi-, n-	finger, toe
-sakana	to pay, enjoy oneself, have a good time
-sála	to do, work, perform, make, till the ground, farm
lisálá, ma-	field, cultivation; vegetable dish

## BASIC COURSE

---

mosálá, mi-	job, work, trade, occupation
-sálama	to be done/made
-sálamaka	to be done/made habitually
esálali, bi-	tool, instrument
-mísáleli	to make/do for oneself
mosáleli, ba-	servant
esálelo, bi-	workshop, workroom, place to work
mosálí, ba-	worker, employee
-sálisa	to help, take care of; employ, instruct
-sálisana	to help each other
lisálisi, bosálisi, ma-	help, aid, assistance
mosálisi, ba-	assistant, helper
-sámba	to plead
esámba, bi-	prayer
-sámbela	to plead for someone; pray; perform/conduct religious services
nsambo	seven
-sana, -sakona	to play, amuse oneself
-sanga	to assemble, meet; mix
sandúku, (ba-)	trunk, box, suitcase, chest
masanga	wine, beer
nsango, n-	news, report
sáni, ba-	dish, bowl, plate, basin
mosani, ba-	player

---

lisano, lisantu, ma-	game
sánzá	month, moon; salary
sapáto, sapáta	shoe(s)
mosapi, mosai, mi-	finger, toe
mísátu, mísató	three
'sciences économiques'	economics
se, te	that... (introduces subordinate clause)
nse, n-	earth, world; bottom; down under, beneath
-seba	to sharpen, file, whet; draw palm wine
'secrétaire'	secretary
sémba	right, just, honest
-sém̄ba	to extend, be right/upright
-sém̄bola	to put right, straighten up, make vertical
-sém̄bwa	to be right, just, sincere; be in an upright position, be straight
-séngé, -séngá	to ask for, beg; order (merchandise)
síka, sikawa	now, just now, recently, immediately
esíká, bi-	place; where; when, while
mosíká, mi-	distance; distant, remote, far off

mosikitele, mi-	mosquito netting
(moustquarie)	
-sila	to finish, be done, finished, already
silasi (cirage)	polish, shoe polish
nsima, n-	back, rear, later, afterward
na nsima	then, next
-simba	to hold, seize
simeti (ciment)	cement
simisi (chemise)	shirt
sinemá (cinéma)	movies, cinema
singa	cord, rope, wire, cable; band, belt
masini (machine)	machine, mechanical instrument; train
nyónso, bánsó	all, every, each
liso, <sup>o</sup> miso (see lisu)	
sodá, ba- (soldat)	soldier
sofele, ba- (chauffeur)	driver, chauffeur
sókó, sóki	if, whether, about, perhaps
sokola (chocolat)	brown, dark red
sokoto	uniform, military jacket/ clothing
-solola	to talk, converse, speak,
sóolo	true, real
mosolo, mi-	money, wealth; dowry
-sómba	to buy, purchase, procure

-sómbama	to be purchased
-sómbela	to sell to someone
-mísómbela	to buy for oneself
mosómbi, ba-	purchaser, buyer
mosoni, ba-	seamstress, tailor
-sono	to sew, make clothes
-sopa	to pour, spill, overturn, spread; talk nonsense
soséti (chausette)	sock, stocking
nsoso, n-	chicken
bisú	we
lisu, liso, <sup>o</sup> misu, <sup>o</sup> miso	eye; (in pl.) with eyes open, with good vision/taste; un- afraid
nsúka, n-	the end
nsúka ya mpóso	weekend
-súka	to end, finish; separate
sukálli (sucre)	sugar; candy; sweet
mosúki, n-	hair
-sukola	to wash, clean, launder; to speak frankly to someone, tell someone off
-misukola	to bathe, take a bath
-sukolela	to wash/clean for someone
-sukolelisa	to have something washed/cleaned for someone
-sukwama	to be/have been washed, mopped

sumé (essuie-main)	towel, wash cloth
lisúsu	again, besides, else, moreover, yet
lisúsu té	no more, no longer
mosúsu, mi-	other, others, else
na ntángu mosúsu	occassionally, sometimes
sutáni (soutane)	cloth (clergy), cassock
masúwa, maswá	boat, ship
-swáa	to bite, sting
mísyóni (mission)	mission; missionary, clergyman (Protestant)

t

ntaba, n-	goat
etabe, bi-	banana
matabísí (matabiche)	matabiche, something extra given as an incentive to buy; tip, gratuity, advantage, profit
taksi (taxi)	taxicab
-tala	to look, look at, visit
talasé (terrasse)	ditch, canal
talatalá	mirror, pane of glass; specta- cles, lamp chimney
botálí, (ma-)	view; viewing; contemplation
motálí, mi-	spectator, observer
-tálisa	to demonstrate, show
lítálisi, ma-	show, demonstration, display

taliyé, talyé (atelier)	workshop, shop, workroom
ntálu, ntálo, n-	price, number
litambála, kitambála, ma-	handkerchief, cloth, towel, napkin
-tábola	to take a walk, travel, move, make progress, hurry
-tábolatambola	to walk a lot, a long way; wander
-tambwisa	to put in motion, start, drive (a car)
motámbwisi, ba-	one who sets in motion, one who spreads, steersman
motábwisi ya mótsuka	driver, chauffeur
-tanda	to spread, stretch out
motáne	bright red/orange/yellow
motánéso	light yellow/tan/beige
-tánga	to read, count, enumerate, add up
ntángu, ntango, n-	time, hour; clock; sun
mítáno, mítánu	five
tásı (tasse)	cup
sáni ya tásı	saucer
tata, ba-	father
matánga	matánga, mourning, reception held at end of mourning and certain other special occa- sions
ntángu, ntango, n-	time, hour; sun; clock
té // te//	not, no

te //te//	that, so that, in order that
téé, tíí	until
motéí, motéyí, mi-	teacher, instructor
-téka	to sell; betray; damage another's reputation
motéki, ba-	seller, trader
motékinyama, ba-	meatseller, butcher
-tékisa	to cause to sell; resell at a profit
telefón (telephone)	telephone
-téleme	to stop, stand up; insist
ntembe, n-	discussion, argument; doubt, suspicion, hesitation
témbele (timbre)	postage-stamp
eténi, bi-	piece, part, share, room
-téya	to teach, instruct
litéya, ma-	lesson
etéyelo, bi-	school
motéyí, motéí, mi-	teacher, instructor
'thermomètre'	thermometer
tíí	tea
tíí, téé	until, up to; (for) a long time, without interruption
-tiela, -tiyela, -tila	to put for, put in for, pour for
-tíka	to leave, abandon, renounce, forsake, abstain from, cease; leave behind; deliver; let, permit

---

-tikala	to stay, remain, stay behind
botíki, (ma-)	resignation, abdication
-tima	to dig, spade
-timola	to dig up, spade over, turn over the soil
ntína, n-	root; basis, meaning, reason cause, significance, principle; because
ntína na, ntína ya	because of, on account of, therefore
-tinda	to order, command; send
-tindama	to be sent, shipped
-tindela	to send someone, order someone
litíti, ma-	blade of grass; hair, sheet of paper; weed, plant
-tiya	to put (in/on), set pour in place, load (up/on)
-tiyana	to put up with each other,
-tiyana ntembe	to discuss
-tiyela, -tiela	to put for, put in for, pour for
tiyó (tuyau)	pipe, tube, hose
moto (See motu)	
moto, mutú, motú, mi-	head; bunch
moto	fire, heat
too	or
motóbá	six
-tóbolo	to pierce, puncture

-tóka	to draw water; dig out/up
-tokisa	to boil, be boiling, cause to boil
-toko	to boil, be boiling
tomáto	to mato
-tóbala	to pick up, lift, carry
-tónda	to be(come) full/filled; fill
-tóndisa	to fill
-tóndo	to wish, hope, thank
-tonga	to bind, tie, join; twist, braid, plait, weave, sew; expand, enlarge
-tónga	to build
-tóngama	to be built, be finished
motóngi, ba-	builder, contractor, mason
-tóngisa	to have built, cause to be built
ntóngó, n-	morning, afternoon
motu, moto, ba-	person, human, man
mutú (See motú)	
mótuka, mi-	automobile, truck, motor car
lituká, ma-	three stones used to cook on; cook stove
ntukú, n-	ten
-tumba	to burn, set fire to, fry, roast over/in a fire
etumba, bi-	war, fight, battle, conflict
-tumbama	to be burned, fired

-túna	to ask, question
-mítúna	to wonder, ask oneself
motúna, mi-	a question
-túnama	to be questioned, interrogated
kitúnga, litúnga, ma-	basket with a lid
litungúlu, ma-	onion, leek
-túta	to strike, beat, mash, crush, bump (against)
motúya, mi-	value, price; number, arithmetic

u

-úmela	to remain, stay on, stay away
-umelaka	to last, continue to last
'université'	university
-úta	to come from
úta	from, since

v

'ville'	city, town; downtown; Kalina, the business and European section of Leopoldville
vinu	wine
víza (visa)	visa
'voiture'	automobile
- 'voter'	to vote

w

wa	of, at
áwa	here; since, as, while

BASIC COURSE

---

mwa	of, belonging
wána, wáana	there, that, by/near you
wápi	where; (emphatic negative) not at all, nothing at all, not whether
wólo	gold

**Y**

ya	of, belonging to
-yáa	to come, come to be, become
-nyákola	to scratch, mark
nyama, n-	animal, meat
monyámá, mi-	net
-yangela	to manage, administrate, arrange
moyángeli, ba-	manager, director, administrator
yé, yee	he, she, him, her, his, hers
boye	so, thus
-yéba	to know, know how to, be ac- quainted with; may, be allowed to
-yébana	to become known
-yébisa	to advise, inform, make known
liyébisa, ma-	notice, indication
-yékola	to study, learn
moyékoli, ba-	student
-yékwisa	to teach, instruct
moyékwisi, ba-	teacher, instructor

---

mayéle	intelligence, understanding, intellect, mind; shyness, craftiness, manner, means
-yém̄ba	to sing
loyém̄bo, n-	song, singing
moyém̄bi, ba-	singer
eyenga, bi-	festival, feast day; Sunday, week
-yíba	to steal, take away
moyíbi, ba-	theif
-yíbisa	to cause to steal, cause to be stolen
-yínda	to become dark/black/dirty
-míyibisa	to cause to be one's possession, to be stolen
yó, yoo	you (sg.), your, yours
óyo	this, these, the
-yóka	to hear, listen; feel; understand
-yókama	to be heard (by someone)
-yókana	to hear (from) one another, understand each other, agree, live on good terms with
-nyókolo	to mistreat, torture, annoy, oppress
monyókoli, ba-	torturer, tyrant, slavedriver; weariness, bother, trouble
nyongo, n-	debt

Z

-zala	to be, exist, sit, live
-zala na	to have
-zala ya	to be made of, consist of
nzala, n-	hunger; famine
ezalali, bi-	seat, chair, bench
bozali, (ma-)	being, nature
ndéngé ya bozali	character, personality
zámba, <sup>o</sup> mámba	woods, forest, jungle, interior, outside, country
Nzámbe	God
zándu, zándo	market, open produce market
-zánga	to be lacking, miss, be without, absent
linanza, ma-	metal box, tin car; sheet of metal
nzelá	See nzilá
zélo	sand
nzémbo, n-	song, singing
-zénga	to cut off, chop off
nzeté, n-	tree, stick, piece of wood, handle
nzilá, nzelá, n-	road, way, path, passage; admittance, permission; opening; means
-zila	to wait, wait for
-zinda	to sink; drown, flood, go under water

## BASIC COURSE

---

-zoka	to be injured, be touched
-zokisa	to injure, wound
-mízokisa	to injure/wound oneself
nzoku, n-	elephant
zómi	ten
-zónga	to return, go/come back
-zóngisa	to send/give back; answer
nzótú, nzótó, n-	body
zulunálo (journal)	newspaper, magazine
zúzi, zúze (juge)	judge; court, tribunal
-zwá	to get, receive, find, meet
-zwáma	to be taken, received, found

### PROPER NAMES

Alobé (Albert)	Albert
'Américain'	American
'Amérique'	America
Andélé (André)	Andrew
'Antoine'	Antoine
Áugusti (août?)	August
Binza	Binza, the (former) European section of Leopoldville
Brazzaville	the city of Brazzaville
California	California
CEGEAC	C.E.G.E.A.C., a new-car dealer th that imports American-made cars

LINGALA

---

Coq	the city of Coquihatchville
Desémbe (decembre)	December
Fevlié (février)	February
Kimwénza	Kimwenza
Kinsásá	Leopoldville; the original settlement, now only a part of Leopoldville
Kisangani	the city of Stanleyville
Kongo	Congo
Leó	the city of Leopoldville
Mái (mai)	May
Málasí (mars)	March
Marensa	the city of Marensa
Matádi	the city of Matadi
'Michel'	Michel
Mónika (Monique)	Monique
Stanley	Sir Henry Morton Stanley
Novémbe (novembre)	November
Okotóbe (octobre)	October
'Pierre'	Pierre
Pólo (Paul)	Paul
Mpótó, Mpútú (Portugal)	Europe
Setémbe, Setémbele (septembre)	September
Yúli (juillet)	July
Yuni (juin)	June
Zavié (janvier)	January
Zóla, Zolá	Zola (proper name)